

A NEW
HISTORY
OF
FRANCE,
BY

QUESTION and ANSWER.

Compiled, from the most eminent *French* historians, for the instruction of the children of a noble family.

With a proper PREFACE, and INTRODUCTION.

By RICHARD ROLT:
Author of the history of the late war.

This work is very necessary to be read by every person who is desirous of understanding the nature of the constitution, power, and interest of FRANCE; as also of its connections with other nations, and particularly with GREAT BRITAIN.

L O N D O N:

Printed for W. OWEN, at *Homer's-Head*, near
Temple-Bar.

MDCCLIV.



A NEW

HISTORY

OF THE

BY

GEORGE B. BROWN

Copyright, 1874, by the author.
Published by the author, 1874.
All rights reserved.

THE HISTORY OF THE
UNITED STATES OF AMERICA
FROM 1776 TO 1876

BY
GEORGE B. BROWN
Author of "The History of the
United States of America from 1776 to 1876"



T H E

P R E F A C E,

S H E W I N G

The rise of government ; and the use of history. The difference of governments in general, with an account of the nature of those instituted by the Gauls and Britons ; as also of their conquest by the Romans. The origin and government of the Goths ; with an account of the conquest of Gaul and Britain by the Saxons. Reflections on the alteration of government in both countries. An account of the Danish and Norman invasions of France and England : with the acquisition of Normandy by Rollo, and the conquest of England by William duke of Normandy. The rise of the first wars between England and France. Reflections on the revolutions of states, particularly of those in England and France : with remarks on the regal power of the monarchs of both kingdoms, the alteration of their governments, the national potency of each country, and their respective interests with regard to each other.

ALL civil government is deducible from paternal authority : for, from single family government, small governments began ; and, from a conjunction of these, by the various

P R E F A C E.

accidents human affairs are subject to, greater kingdoms had their commencements : but, government having been in a fluctuating situation throughout the several parts of the universe, from the very time of its institution ; the inhabitants of these different countries have established different modes of government, which have principally occasioned the rise of nations in some parts of the world, and the fall of them in others ; from whence history has its foundation.

History is not intended only for the instruction of princes and conquerors ; but likewise for the information of such persons whose dignity of birth, and eminence of abilities, may introduce them to the management of public affairs : nor is history less adapted to the understanding of the generality of the people, especially in free countries ; where it is necessary for every individual to study the interest of the whole ; for, as the people themselves were the constituent parts of all governments, they ought to be instructed first in the principles of their own constitution, and then in those forms of government which have been adapted by their neighbours : because, though the rotation of government, is so very wide in its course; yet it may be found, through all ages, and in all nations, to have moved pretty much upon the same axis : so that all power is comparative, and most governments have a degree of similarity to others ; from whence we may discern the establishment and declension, the extent and duration, of all governments.

Baron *Puffendorf* observes, “ That it seems a great mistake, in those to whom the education of youth is committed, to neglect the history of the modern

P R E F A C E.

modern times :” for, if it is proper that young persons should make those things their greatest study, which, probably, will be of the greatest utility ; it is of more consequence for all men, especially of such whose high births oblige them to be the guardians of their country, to understand well the history of their own, and the neighbouring countries, than to be ever so well acquainted with the histories of *Cornelius Nepos*, *Curtius*, or any of the ancients : therefore, young gentlemen of family should be exhorted to apply themselves to it in their youth ; because their memory is at that time, in its full vigour : though it is equally requisite, they should be also as early acquainted with the ancient historians, particularly the *Grecian* and *Roman* authors, whom they may compare with the histories of later times, and thereby receive a more perfect knowledge of the whole : for government may be considered as one large tree, whose different branches are composed by the histories of different nations ; for the understanding whereof, among the young gentlemen of *Sweden*, baron *Puffendorf* undertook to compose his introduction to the history of the principal kingdoms, and states of *Europe* ; and monsieur *Harlay*, first president of the parliament of *Paris*, got the history of *France* compiled for the instruction of his own son ; as I have also done for the information of the young heir of one of our best families in *Great Britain*.

The origin of all civil government was the same ; being the foundation of societies ; whereby several persons united together for their mutual defence, under some particular form of magistracy : some of which arose from consent and compact ; while, in particular cities, some were independent

P R E F A C E.

on any other for their original ; and others owed their original to neighbouring cities, who sent out people for their colonization.

The customs, educations, opinions, and laws, which have governed the several nations of the world, have been greatly influenced by the differences of the several climates, which affect the imaginations, passions, and actions of men, as much as it does their statures, complexions, and features : hence, the different institutions of government in the general system, and the permanency of them in particulars. Thus, extremes still agreeing, we may observe, that the more northern and southern nations, have ever lived under single and arbitrary dominions ; as all the regions of *Tartary*, and *Muscovy*, on one side ; and of *Africa*, quite up to *China*, on the other : while those under the more temperate climates, especially in *Europe*, have been always accustomed to more moderate governments ; running anciently much into commonwealths ; and, of later ages, into principalities bounded by laws, which have more difference in their name than in their nature : for, though the old distinctions run otherwise, there seem to be but two general kinds of government in the world ; the one exercised according to the arbitrary commands and will of some single person ; and the other according to certain orders or laws, introduced by agreement or custom, and not to be changed without the consent of many. We should likewise observe, that, in the alterations which happened in their governments, some of them arose by consent among themselves ; as was the case of *Lacedæmon*, and others of those alterations arising by intestine seditions which made for usurpation : while others were changed by conquest

P R E F A C E.

quest from abroad : which may serve to elucidate the histories of all parts of the world, when traced to their original sources, where, as other human inventions are not easily brought to perfection, we may find that the first civil societies were so rude and imperfect, that laws, and other regulations, necessary for the conducting of civil government, were gradually devised : and we may also find, that the first governments were small ; since, the further we look back into history, we shall discover the different states enjoying a greater dependency than afterwards ; when, in course of time, they either united together, or were subdued by states of greater potency.

It is not my business, in this place, to point out the establishments of the *Affyrian, Persian, Grecian, and Roman* empires ; nor to shew how they swallowed up one another, and were afterwards swallowed up themselves ; the three former by the bravery of the *Romans* ; and the *Romans* first by the inundation of the *Goths*, from their northern hives, in the reign of *Honorius* ; afterwards by the ravages of the *Turks*, in the eastern empire, under the conduct of *Mahomet II.* who sacked *Constantinople*, and put an end to the *Grecian* empire by the death of the emperor *Constantine Paleologus*, as the *Ostrogoths* had done to the glory of *Rome*, by erecting the kingdom of *Lombardy*. However, if from the origin of men, we come to their dispositions and manners in the most ancient times, before they coalesced into their respective governments, we shall find them to have been very barbarous ; wandering, from one place to another, in quest of food and maintenance ; those who inhabited barren countries, making frequent incursions upon those who held the

the

P R E F A C E.

the more fruitful ; and the former being also frequently driven out to make room for others, who were afterwards likewise expelled.

There is no doubt, but the ancient *Gauls*, and the ancient *Britons*, were of the same extraction ; the language, customs, and religions of the latter, being generally the same with those of the former, before the *Roman* conquests in *Gaul*, which were much earlier than in *Britain* : and this affinity caused the *Britons* frequently to assist the *Gauls* upon the coasts, in their wars against the *Romans* ; which gave *Cæsar* the first occasion for his invading *Britain* ; as well for revenge and safety, as for conquest and glory. Thus, we not only find the inhabitants of both countries, in their religion and their laws, governed by their druids ; but also conformable to the same sort of civil government, which was composed of several small nations under several petty princes, who, upon great and common dangers, united together under the conduct of one leader ; *Vercingetorix* being elected commander in chief when *Cæsar* invaded *Gaul*, as was *Cassivelaunus* on his invasion of *Britain* : though, we must observe, that *Britain* had the honour of being the last triumph of that mighty republic, which had before subdued, and reduced into provinces, so many kingdoms and commonwealths in *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*.

Upon the divisions of the *Roman* empire, which was grown a prey to their armies, and commonly disposed of by their inconstant humours, the pretenders often fought their battles, and decided their quarrels in *Gaul* ; as well several of the commanders there who arrived at the empire, as several others who fell in the pursuit of that fatal purple, and

P R E F A C E.

and left only the name of tyrants behind them in the stories of that age; till, at last, the *Goths* and *Vandals* invaded the *Roman* empire, with such infinite numbers as to settle themselves in the *Roman* provinces: so that *Gaul* and *Britain*, having been originally inhabited by the same race of people, were afterwards both provinces to *Rome*, and now became both in the possession of the *Saxons*.

As the northern nations were so numerous, their countries so poor, and the people so ignorant of trade; they naturally became of a martial disposition, which led them from their inclement climates to seek new adventures, and acquire more agreeable possessions in other countries; which they most surprizingly performed under the conduct of *Odin*, the first great leader of the *Asiatic* *Goths*, or *Getæ*, into *Europe*, who established the seat of his dominion in *Sweden*, and became the founder of that mighty empire round the *Baltic* sea; from whence all the *Gothic* governments, in these north-west parts of the world, were derived, by the spreading conquests of those northern races.

These *Gothic* nations were divided into several branches, the principal of which were the *Saxons*, who were so denominated from a weapon generally used among them, and made like a scythe with the edge reversed, which in their language were termed *Seaxes*: A branch of these *Saxons*, under the name of *Suevi*, had, some time before the wars of *Cæsar* in *Gaul*, invaded and subdued very extensive territories in *Germany*, from the coast of the north-west ocean to the south-eastern parts, whereof

P R E F A C E.

whereof *Suabia* still retains the memory and the name ; where they became the most formidable people of the *Goths* ; and afterwards, by limits agreed between them, were divided into two several nations.

The one branch of the *Suevi*, towards the south-east of *Germany*, were called *FRANCS*, from their great love of liberty, and their valour in preserving it, by never submitting to the *Roman* subjection, as had been done by many other of the *German* nations : and these, upon the fatal decline of that empire, invaded *Gaul*, under the conduct of *Pharamond* ; where, under the succeeding kings of his race, they conquered the whole province, by establishing that noble and ancient kingdom of *France*.

The other branch of the *Suevi* possessed themselves of all those tracts of land in *Germany*, lying between the *Elbe* and the *Lower Rhine*, and extended their seats all over the coasts of the north-west sea ; from whence they exercised their arms, and fierce courage, in all sorts of spoils and piracies, not only upon merchants, or traders at sea, but also upon the maritime coasts of *Britain*, opposite to those countries about the mouth of the *Rhine*, or thereunto adjacent ; to whom *Vortigern*, chosen king by the deserted *Britons*, made address for assistance against the *Picts* and *Scots*, who had made inroads as far as *Trent*, when the emperor *Valentinian* the second was obliged to withdraw all the *Roman* forces out of *Britain*, for the protection even of the city of *Rome* itself, from the rapacity of the *Vandals*. So that the two branches of the *Suevi*, became possessors of *France* and *Bri-*

P R E F A C E.

tain; *Pharamond* having obtained the former by conquest; while *Hengist* and *Horsa* subdued the other by policy first, and afterwards by cruelty.

The ancient *Gauls*, and the ancient *Britons*, were now subject to the *Saxons*, who introduced their laws, customs, and manners, among the old inhabitants; who became to their conquerors in a condition of downright servitude. *Gaul* was now called *France*, from its new masters, and became an entire monarchy, under *Clotaire I.* in the year 560: while *Britain* lost its name for that of *England*, on account of the *Angles*, another *Gothic* nation, whom the *Saxons* had invited over from *Schonen* and *Jutland*, to assist in the reduction, and partake in the division, of the country; which, from an heptarchial government, became united under one monarch, in the person of *Egbert*, about the year 830.

The *Saxons* were a sort of idolatrous pagans, who worshiped several gods peculiar to themselves; among whom *Woden*, *Thor*, and *Frea*, were the principal: but, in the year 600, *Ethelbert*, king of the *South-Saxons*, in *England*, was converted by *St. Austin* to christianity; and, about the year 500, *Clovis* king of *France* was baptised by *St. Remy*: after which, the christian religion became universally adopted in both nations, as well as the *Saxon* language, laws, and customs; whereby not only a change of government was introduced; but also a change of the very people or nation, that inhabited or possessed the lands of both countries; which brought an alteration on the face of nature; whereby these two *Roman* provinces grew into two *Saxon* kingdoms, both

P R E F A C E

both governed by equitable laws, and both subject only to a limited monarchy; which *England* has been happy enough to retain through the long course of thirteen hundred years; while *France* has been unhappy enough to have lost her ancient valuable liberties, by submitting to that arbitrary power which has been industriously laid upon it, ever since the reign of *Lewis* the ninth, in 1461.

While the *English* monarchy was united under *Egbert*, and the *French* nation was governed by *Lewis* the pious, a mighty swarm of the old northern *Suevi*, who had possessed the seats about the *Baltic*, then almost deserted by such numbers of *Goths*, *Vandals*, and *Saxons*, as had issued out of them some centuries before, began, under the names of *Danes* and *Normans*, at first to infest the sea, and at length the lands of the *Belgic*, *Gallie*, and *British* shores; filling all, where they came, with slaughters, spoils, and devastations.

The *Normans* first over-ran the *Belgic* provinces upon the mouth of the *Rhine*; giving the new names of *Holland*, and *Zealand*, to those parts adjacent to the sea: afterwards they sailed, with mighty numbers, into the mouth of the *Sein*; and, with great fierceness, under the direction of *Rollo*, subdued the northern parts of *France*, then called *Neustria*; which, from them, first received, and has ever since retained, the name of *Normandy*; whereby it became the state of a great *Norman* duke, and his successors, for several generations: though the *French* monarch, *Charles* the simple, yielded it up wholly to *Rollo*, upon condition of his turning christian, and holding that duchy of the crown of *France*, for him and his successors: which, about two centuries afterwards, occasioned the

P R E F A C E.

the first rise of those wars between *England* and *France*, that, as they began on a very slight foundation, became from time to time so much the more important, as, at length, to make those wars which were begun in wantonness, an absolute necessity; according as the creed of political faith became to be more formidable among mankind, than that of the christian religion.

In the mean time, the *Danes* began their incursions, and furious invasions, upon the coasts of *England*; so as to settle themselves first upon the northern parts of that country, and at last to establish themselves in the possession of the whole kingdom: obliging the *Saxon* monarch, *Ethelred*, to fly for safety into *Normandy*, where the honourable protection given him by that duke occasioned *England* to fall into the hands of the *Normans*: for, upon the death of *Edward the confessor*, *William*, the bastard son of *Robert* duke of *Normandy*, invaded and conquered *England*, in the year 1066; when he confirmed to the *English*, the laws and customs of their ancestors: for, though he was an absolute conqueror, he had too much sagacity to ground his right to the sovereignty of a free people, on conquest; who, on the assertion of that title, could imagine nothing less than the loss of freedom.

Thus, we see, how one of the noblest provinces in *France*, and the whole kingdom of *England*, became subject to, and united under *William* the *Norman*; the former of which, was annexed to the latter in the reign of *Henry I.* and continued so till that of king *John*, when *Philip* of *France*

P R E F A C E.

recovered *Normandy*, after it had been severed from the *French* crown above 300 years:

William was assisted in this conquest by the duke of *Orleans*, the earls of *Poitu* and *Maine*, and several other of the principal families in *France*; some of whom he nobly rewarded, and others he artfully got returned into their own country. But the *French* monarch grew jealous of the mighty power of the duke of *Normandy*, and took an opportunity of fomenting a quarrel between *William* and his eldest son *Robert*, who prevailed upon the states of *Normandy* to acknowledge him as their sovereign; which, indeed, his father had promised him, when he should be quietly settled in the possession of his new conquered dominions: however, *William*, who had but just conquered *England* with his *Normans*, now reduced *Normandy* with his *English* subjects; after which he became reconciled to his son, and joined him in commission with his youngest son *Henry*, in the government of *Normandy*.

As an instance that the wisest councils may be discomposed by the smallest accidents; and that the securest peace of states and kingdoms, may be disturbed by the lightest passions, as well as by the deep designs, of those that govern them; it is necessary to shew on what a slight and unexpected occasion, those wars first broke out between *England* and *France*, which have cost both nations so much blood, and settled between them, if not a natural, at least such a political animosity, as never can be reconciled, while *England* is able to preserve her independency by trade, or while *France* is capable

P R E F A C E:

ble of pursuing her new-adopted principles of arbitrary and universal dominion.

The two young *Norman* princes, having settled their government in order and tranquility, made a visit to the king of *France*, then at *Constance*, who received them with great honour and kindness; where prince *Henry*, on account of the similitude of age, became the constant companion of *Lewis*, the young dauphin. But it happened, one evening, that the dauphin, playing at chess at the lodgings of prince *Henry*, lost a great many games, and much money to the latter; whereupon the dauphin grew first into ill humour, and at length into ill language; which being returned by the prince, the dauphin fell into a passion, called him the son of a bastard, and threw some of the chessmen at his head: upon which prince *Henry*, enraged, took up the chess-board, and struck the dauphin with such fury on the head, that he laid him bleeding on the ground, and had killed him, if his brother *Robert* had not restrained him, and made him sensible how much more it concerned him to make his escape, than pursue his revenge: whereupon, they went down immediately, and escaped to *Pontoise*. The king of *France*, exasperated by this accident and indignity to his son, demanded satisfaction, and prepared for revenge, by raising an army to invade *Normandy*: while the king of *England*, perceiving the war inevitable, entered upon it with such vigour, as to invade *France* with an *English* army; taking several towns in *Poitou*, while the *French* took the city of *Vernon*: by which hostilities on both sides, the war first began between *England* and *France*; which seemed afterwards to have been entailed upon the posterity and successors of these two princes,

for

P R E F A C E.

for so many generations, to have drawn more noble blood, and been attended with more memorable achievements, than any other national quarrel we read of in any ancient or modern story.

We may observe, what labour, practice, peril, blood-shed, and cruelty, the kings and princes of the world have undergone, and exercised, taken upon them, and committed, to make themselves, and their issues, masters of the world : yet we see, that *Babylon, Persia, Macedon, or Rome*, have no fruit, flower, or leaf, springing upon the face of the earth ; even their very roots and ruins hardly remain : for all that the hand of man can make, is overturned by the hand of man, or consumed by by time. Therefore, some politicians say, that states have fallen, either by foreign force, or domestic negligence and dissention ; while others observe, that the greatest have sunk under their own weight ; and others, that divine providence has set a period to every state, before its first foundation.

Whatever are the greatest causes of the revolution of states ; some, or other, must reach them all in their turns : thus, we have seen both *England* and *France*, frequently reduced to the greatest extremities : the former was invaded by the *French*, and almost conquered by *Lewis* the dauphin, in the reign of king *John* : but *France*, having been dismantled of several provinces by king *Edward* the III. of *England*, in 1360, afterwards acknowledged *Henry* VI. of *England*, for its monarch ; however, in 1449, the *English* were driven out of all their possessions in *France*, except *Calais*, and a few others ; which were also taken from them

a lit-

P R E F A C E:

a little more than one hundred years afterwards: though the kings of *England*, still retain the title of king of *France*.

As both nations were formerly governed by ambitious princes, they have been both great sufferers on account of their foreign wars; and more so on account of their domestic dissensions, particularly on account of religion: but *England* has been happily relieved from such troubles by the reformation under *Edward VI.* and *France* had like to have enjoyed the same happiness under *Henry IV.* yet there is no accounting for the difference of such national felicity! unless time had matured one kingdom for such a scene of prosperity, and also guarded it from the gripe of arbitrary power in succeeding reigns: while it bent the other kingdom so low to the ground, as not only to rivet the people with the yoke of papacy, even against the consent of the monarch; but also to curb them with the galling bit of arbitrary power, so tightly held by his successors.

The power of *France* and *England*, was formerly very different from what it is at present. The *French* monarchs, under the reign of *Hugh Capet*, in 987, had but an inconsiderable tract of territory; the greatest part of the kingdom being enjoyed by independent princes; such as the dukes of *Normandy*, *Burgundy*, *Aquitaine*, *Gascony*, and *Languedoc*; the counts of *Flanders*, *Champaign*, *Thoulouse*, *Vienne*, *Provence*, and *Dauphiny*, all whose territories were gradually united to the crown. And, though *Henry II.* conquered *Ireland*, *Wales* was not united to *England*, till the reign of *Edward I.* nor was *Scotland* till that of

P R E F A C E.

James I. so that both kingdoms are now more formidable than ever : but the strength of *France* lies principally in the numbers of its people, subject to the will of an arbitrary prince ; and that of *Great Britain* in the potency of her fleet, under the government of a prince who protects the liberties, and reigns in the hearts of his people.

All great actions in the world, and revolutions of states, may be truly derived from the genius of the persons who conduct and govern them : thus the bigotry of *James II.* established the religion and liberties of *England* ; and the pride of *Lewis XIII.* in terminating the civil wars, which had cost *France* above a million of lives, paved the way for that arbitrary power which has abolished all the liberties of the people : therefore, such revolutions in states should be carefully consulted ; as they may serve for example, or instruction to posterity, which are the great ends of history, and ought to be the chief care of all historians.

The latter greatness of the crown of *France* began in the time of *Lewis* the eleventh, by the spoils of the house of *Burgundy*, and the divisions of the princes, which gave that prince the heart of attempting to reduce the government to his own arbitrary will and pleasure ; the kings being before controuled by their princes, and restrained by their states ; while, in point of revenue, they were kept within the bounds of the royal demesnes, and the subjects voluntary contributions : but now all is altered ! the monarch, if he pleases, may act the tyrant as much as an emperor of *Morocco* ; and the subjects are sure to groan beneath

P R E F A C E.

neath the load of servitude, as much as those subject to the great *Moghol*.

By the addition of *Lorrain*, the *French* conquests in the *Netherlands*, and on the *Rhine*; as also by their colonies in *America*; with their settlements in *Africa*, and *Asia*; the *French* are become greatly more powerful than formerly: to which, if we add the accession of *Spain* to the house of *Bourbon*, and the formidable navy which of late has been the invariable object of the *French* ministry, *France* may have been designed for greater achievements, than may have been seen in *Christendom* since the reign of *Charlemagne*: for, notwithstanding it might seem consistent with the general policy of nations, that *France*, consolidated as she is, should rather seek the conservation of her present greatness; than the renewing those flames of war, which, while they have ruined some of her neighbours, have reduced her to the lowest ebb of poverty; for all her finances were exhausted before the conclusion of the treaty of *Utrecht*; and we very well know, which she as sensibly felt, that her navy was utterly ruined before that of *Aix la Chappelle*: however, besides that the motions and desires of human minds are endless, it may perhaps be necessary for *France*, from respects within, to have some war or other in pursuit abroad, to amuse the nation, and keep them from reflecting upon their condition at home, which cannot but be hard and uneasy to the people; except such as are in charge, or in pay, from the court: therefore, to preserve that equilibrium of power, which only can preserve the liberties of *Europe*, and protect many independent nations from being swallowed up in one; it is necessary for *Great Britain* to have a constant eye
upon

P R E F A C E.

upon all the transactions of *France*, whose policy, interest, and ability, should be well understood by *Britons*; which makes the following sheets necessary to be read by every man who values his country, and particularly by those whose tender years have not been capable of attaining to a larger knowledge of this important branch of history: for, by understanding the interest of other nations, we shall best know how to contribute to the advantage of our own government.

E R R A T A.

In the Introduction, page 1. for *Goths* read *Gauls*.



T H E



T H E
I N T R O D U C T I O N
T O T H E
H I S T O R Y of *FRANCE*,
By QUESTION and ANSWER.

Giving an account of the name, situation, extent, boundaries, air, seas, rivers; the government ecclesiastical and civil; the provinces into which it is divided; their religion, archbishopricks, and dioceses; the king's titles, prerogatives, ornaments, and arms; the princes of the blood, nobility, and gentry; with the number of inhabitants, abbeys, and convents, monks, and nuns; as also, an estimate of the annual revenues of the kingdom, the clergy, and religious houses.

2. **W** H A T part of the continent is that, called by the name of *France*?

A. It contains a medley of nations, which, in their turns, have had the sovereignty; such as the *Goths*, *Romans*, *Franks*, *Burgundians*, and *Normans*; but the *Franks* had

B

the

ii THE INTRODUCTION TO

the honour of communicating their name to this desirable country.

Q. How is the present kingdom of *France* bounded ?

A. By the *British* channel and the *Netherlands* on the north ; by *Germany*, *Switzerland*, *Savoy*, and *Italy*, on the east ; by the *Mediterranean* and *Spain*, on the south ; and by the *Atlantick*, or western ocean, on the west ; extending from the 42d to the 51st degree of north latitude, and taking up above 11 degrees of longitude ; the most easterly part of *Provence*, lying seven degrees to the eastward of *London*.

Q. What is the shape of *France* ?

A. Were it not for the province of *Bretagne*, which stretches itself above 100 Miles farther into the ocean, than any other part of the kingdom, the form would be almost square, and the breadth and length pretty near equal ; being about 600 miles over either way.

Q. Is *France* a populous country ?

A. There is scarce any country in *Europe*, but what is crouded with *French* servants, or *French* refugees ; which is a sufficient proof, that it was exceeding populous, before persecutions, war, and famine, destroyed their numbers : However, they may now be computed at about sixteen millions.

Q. Of what number of forces do their armies consist ?

A. In the two last wars, the monarch had between 4 and 500,000 men ; which did not a little tend to depopulate the kingdom.

Q. Have

THE HISTORY OF FRANCE. iii

Q. Have they any navy ?

A. Yes ; consisting of about 50 ships of the line ; besides 60 frigates, and 40 gallies ; which they are able to mann with 30,000 seamen : and their commerce is now so considerable, that, in the late war, the *English* took 2185 *French* ships ; but, since the Peace of *Aix la Chapelle*, they have been continually increasing their marine.

Q. What are the annual revenues of *France* ?

A. About two hundred and sixty seven millions of livres, or thirteen millions of pounds sterling ; arising from the tailles, capitations, free gifts, tenths, aids, gabelles, and other casual revenues.

Q. What sort of a climate is that of *France* in general ?

A. The air is temperate, equally exempted from the extremities of heat and cold ; on which account, it is preferable to *Germany*, and the northern countries on one hand ; as it is to *Spain* and *Italy* on the other ; which happy situation occasions a plenty of all things desirable in life.

Q. What are the seas which border upon *France* ?

A. In this respect, indeed, we must allow, that *France* has the advantage of most kingdoms in *Europe* ; the seas affording them an easy communication with the rest of the world ; for the *British* channel washes all its northern shores ; the *Atlantic* ocean its western coasts ; and the *Mediterranean* the south ; therefore, no country can be better situated for the advancement of trade and navigation ; of which they, perhaps, have not made the advantages they might ; but are, at present, daily improving.

iv THE INTRODUCTION TO

Q. How is this kingdom supplied with fresh water?

A. Extremely well, by rivers; of which, the chief are, the *Loire*, the *Rhone*, the *Garronne*, and the *Seine*. The *Loire*, takes its course north, and north-west; being, with all its windings, from the source to the sea, computed to run about 500 miles. The *Rhone*, flows on south west, to *Lyons*, and then runs on due south, till it falls into the *Mediterranean*. The *Garronne* rises in the *Pyrenean* mountains; takes its course first north east; and, receiving in its course several lesser streams, has a communication with the *Mediterranean*, by the royal canal, the work of *Lewis XIV*. The *Seine* runs to the north west, visiting *Troyes*, *Paris*, and *Rouen*, in its way; receiving in its course a number of less considerable streams.

Q. Into how many provinces, or general governments, is the kingdom of *France* divided?

A. When the three estates of the Kingdom, the clergy, the nobility, and commons, used to assemble in parliament, and give their consent to such Laws as were enacted, *France* was divided into 12 provinces, from whence they used to be summoned.

Q. Which were they?

A. *Normandy*, *Picardy*, the isle of *France*, *Champaign*, *Bretagne*, *Orleanois*, *Burgundy*, *Lyonnois*, *Guienne*, *Languedoc*, *Dauphine*, and *Provence*.

Q. Do these parliaments now continue?

A. They have been dissolved ever since the year 1614: so that the kingdom is at present divided into 36 provinces, which ordinarily go under the
the

THE HISTORY OF FRANCE. v

the name of generalities: Being, 1. The general government of *Paris*. 2. Of the isle of *France*. 3. *Picardy*. 4. *Champagne*. 5. *Burgundy*. 6. *Dauphine*. 7. *Provence*. 8. *Languedoc*. 9. The government du *Foix*. 10. *Navarre* and *Bearne*. 11. *Guyenne* and *Gascony*. 12. *Saintonge* and *Angomois*. 13. *D'Aums*. 14. *Poitou*. 15. *Bretagne*. 16. *Normandy*. 17. *Havre de Grace*. 18. *Du Maine* and *Perche*. 19. *Orleanois*. 20. *Nivernois*. 21. *Bourbonois*. 22. *Lyonois*. 23. *D'Auvergne*. 24. *Du Limosin*. 25. *De la Marche*. 26. The government of *Berry*. 27. *Touraine*. 28. *Anjou*. 29. *Saumur*. 30. *Flanders*. 31. *Dunkirk*. 32. *Metz* and *Verdun*. 33. *Toul*. 34. *Alsace*. 35. *Franche-Compte*, and 36. *Roussillon*.

Q. What is the established religion in *France*?

A. That of the *Roman catholic*; but the *Gallican* church pretends to enjoy greater liberties and privileges, and to be less subject to the see of *Rome*, than any other christian state of that communion. However, we find the nation divided into two great parties; one of them zealous in defending the rights of the *Gallican* church, against the encroachments of *Rome*; the other no less zealous in asserting the papal supremacy.

Q. Which party seems, at this day, to have the greater influence?

A. The *Jesuits*; to whose indefatigable industry, we may ascribe the constitution *Unigenitus*, after so long and warm a struggle.

Q. In what does the ecclesiastical government of *France* consist?

A. All spiritual causes are cognizable, at this day, in their ecclesiastical courts; provided they

vi THE INTRODUCTION TO

are not intermixed with temporal matters, or concern the state, or civil judicatures. On the contrary, all temporal matters, and those which regard the civil government, are subject to lay-jurisdiction. But the bishops exercise their authority by an official, who ought to be a graduate and a priest.

Q. Are the kings of *France* subject to the laws of the holy see?

A. No farther than they think fit; consequently, all the privileges which the ecclesiastics enjoy are derived from the crown; and these may be restrained and revoked, when his majesty sees proper.

Q. Does the king of *France* nominate to vacant benefices?

A. To all bishopricks and abbeys; and the pope afterwards grants his bulls of consecration; provided the party nominated be 27 years of age, and a doctor of law, or divinity.

Q. What is that which is called the Regale in this kingdom?

A. The power of seizing the temporalities of all vacant archbishopricks, and bishopricks. The king has also the presentation of vacant benefices belonging to the bishopricks, till the oath of fidelity of the successor be registered in the chamber of Accounts, and he has obtained an order there to take possession of it; nay, the king often grants pensions to laymen out of the bishopricks and abbeys.

Q. What are the liberties of the *Gallican* church, which are distinct from her privileges?

A. They

THE HISTORY OF FRANCE. vii

A. They are two : 1. The pope cannot intermeddle in things relating to temporal affairs, in any of the king's dominions ; and if he does the clergy are not bound to obey him. 2. Though the pope be acknowledged head of the church in spirituals ; his power is nevertheless bounded in *France*, by canons and ancient councils, received in the kingdom ; for the *Gallican* church has always held that a general council is above the pope.

Q. Can the clergy of *France* assemble without leave of the king ?

A. No: And these assemblies likewise are of two sorts; the one called general, because it is composed of the deputies or representatives of all the ecclesiastical provinces: The other private, because it consists only of such prelates as are about *Paris*, who are called to treat of some matter of importance, when there is not time to chuse and assemble the deputies of the provinces.

Q. How many archbishopricks, and bishopricks, does the kingdom of *France* contain ?

A. Eighteen of the former, and 113 of the latter.

Q. Give me an account of them in order.

A. 1. The archbishoprick of *Aix*, the suffragans whereof are ; 1. the bishop of *Apt* ; 2. the bishop of *Riez* ; 3. the bishop of *Frejus* ; 4. the bishop of *Gap* ; 5. the bishop of *Sisteron*.

2. The archbishoprick of *Alby*, the suffragans whereof are ; 1. the bishop of *Castres* ; 2. the bishop of *Mande* ; 3. the bishop of *Cabors* ; 4. the bishop of *Rodez* ; 5. the bishop of *Vabres*.

3. The archbishoprick of *Ambrun*, the suffragans whereof are ; 1. the bishop of *Digne* ; 2. the bishop

viii THE INTRODUCTION TO

of *Grasse*; 3. the bishop of *Vence*; 4. the bishop of *Glandeva*; 5. the bishop of *Senex*.

4. The archbishoprick of *Arles*, the suffragans whereof are; 1. the bishop of *Marseilles*; 2. the bishop of *St. Paul trois Chateaux*; 3. the bishop of *Toulon*; 4. the bishop of *Orange*.

5. The archbishoprick of *Auch*, the suffragans whereof are; 1. the bishop of *Dax*, or *Acqs*; 2. the bishop of *Laiçtoure*; 3. the bishop of *Comenge*; 4. the bishop of *Conserans*; 5. the bishop of *Aire*; 6. the bishop of *Bazas*; 7. the bishop of *Tarbes*; 8. the bishop of *Oleron*; 9. the bishop of *Lescar*; 10. the bishop of *Bayonne*.

6. The archbishoprick of *Besançon*, the suffragans whereof are; 1. the bishop of *Belley*, &c.

7. The archbishoprick of *Bourdeaux*, the suffragans whereof are; 1. the bishop of *Agen*; 2. the bishop of *Condom*; 3. the bishop of *Angouleme*; 4. the bishop of *Saintes*; 5. the bishop of *Poitiers*; 6. the bishop of *Rochelle*; 7. the bishop of *Luçon*; 8. the bishop of *Perigux*; 9. the bishop of *Sarlat*.

8. The archbishoprick of *Bourges*, the suffragans whereof are; 1. the bishop of *Clermont*; 2. the bishop of *St. Flour*; 3. the bishop of *Limoges*; 4. the bishop of *Tulles*; 6. the bishop of *Puy*.

9. The archbishoprick of *Cambray*, the suffragans whereof are; 1. the bishop of *Arras*; 2. the shop of *St. Omer*; 3. the bishop of *Tournay*; 4. the bishop of *Ypres*.

10. The archbishoprick of *Lyons*, the suffragans whereof are; 1. the bishop of *Autun*; 2. the bishop of *Langres*; 3. the bishop of *Chalons*; 4. the bishop of *Macon*.

THE HISTORY OF FRANCE. ix

11. The archbishoprick of *Narbonne*, the suffragans whereof are; 1. the bishop of *Beziers*; 2. the bishop of *Agde*; 3. the bishop of *Carcaffonne*; 4. the bishop of *Nismes*; 5. the bishop of *Montpelier*; 6. the bishop of *Lodeve*; 7. the bishop of *Uzes*; 8. the bishop of *St. Pons de Tomieres*; 9. the bishop of *Alet*; 10. the bishop of *Alais*; 11. the bishop of *Elne*, or *Perpignan*.

12. The archbishoprick of *Paris*, the suffragans whereof are; 1. the bishop of *Chartres*; 2. the bishop of *Meaux*; 3. the bishop of *Orleans*; 4. the bishop of *Blois*.

13 The archbishoprick of *Rheims*, the suffragans whereof are; 1. the bishop of *Soissons*; 2. the bishop of *Chalons sur Marne*; 3. the bishop of *Laon*; 4. the bishop of *Senlis*; 5. the bishop of *Beauvais*; 6. the bishop of *Amiens*; 7. the bishop of *Noyon*; 8. the bishop of *Bologne*.

14. The archbishoprick of *Rouen*, the suffragans whereof are; 1. the bishop of *Bayeux*; 2. the bishop of *Auranches*; 3. the bishop of *Evreux*; 4. the bishop of *Seez*; 5. the bishop of *Lixieux*; 6. the bishop of *Coutances*.

15. The archbishoprick of *Sens*, the suffragans whereof are; the bishop of *Troyes*; 2. the bishop of *Auxerre*; 3. the bishop of *Nevers*; 4. the bishop of *Bethlem*.

16. The archbishoprick of *Thoulouse*, the suffragans whereof are; 1. the bishop of *Pamiers*; 2. the bishop of *Montauban*; 3. the bishop of *Mirepoix*; 4. the bishop of *Lavaur*; 5. the bishop of *Rieux*; 6. the bishop of *Lombez*; 7. the bishop of *Pa-poul*.

17. The archbishoprick of *Tours*, the suffragans whereof are; 1. the bishop of *Mans*; 2. the bi-

x THE INTRODUCTION TO

shop of *Angers*; 3. the bishop of *Rennes*; 4. the bishop of *Nantz*; 5. the bishop of *Vannes*; 6. the bishop of *Cournouailles*; 7. the bishop of *St. Paul de Leon*; 8. the bishop of *Treguier*; 9. the bishop of *St. Brieux*; 10. the bishop of *St. Malo*; 11. the bishop of *Doll*.

18. The archbishoprick of *Vienne*, the suffragans whereof are; 1. the bishop of *Valence*; 2. the bishop of *Die*; 3. the bishop of *Grenoble*; 4. the bishop of *Viviers*; 5. the bishop of *Geneve*.

19. The three bishopricks, are those of *Metz*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*, all suffragans to the archbishop of *Triers* in *Germany*.

20. The bishop of *Strasbourg* is suffragan to the archbishop of *Mentz*.

21. The bishop of *Perpignan* in *Roussilon*, is suffragan to the archbishop of *Terragona* in *Spain*.

Q. How many abbeys, and convents are there in this Kingdom?

A. About 750 abbeys of Monks, 200 of Nuns, and 10,000 other lesser convents.

Q. How many monks and nuns are computed to inhabit these places?

A. They inclose upwards of 200,000, of both kinds.

Q. What do the whole revenues of the clergy and religious houses amount to annually?

A. To about 26 millions sterling.

Q. How does the *French* king stile himself?

A. *Lewis*, by the grace of God, king of *France* and *Navarre*. The pope, in his bulls, gives him the title of the eldest son of the church, and the most christian king; as he is stiled by foreigners; but

THE HISTORY OF FRANCE. xi

but his subjects, in writing or speaking of him, call him the king, or his majesty only ; and, in speaking to him, give him the application of *Sire*.

Q. What are the arms of *France* ?

A. Three fleurs de lis or, in a field azure, supported by two angels in the habit of *Levites*; having each of them a banner in his hands with the same arms.

Q. What is the crest ?

A. An open crown, the whole under a grand azure pavilion, strewed with fleurs de lis or, and ermines ; and over it a close crown, with a double fleur de lis or ; on the sides of it are flying streamers, on which are written the words used in battle, *Montjoye*, *St. Dennis* ; and above them, on the royal banner, or oriflame, *Lilia non laborant, neque nent* ; being, as it is said, an allusion to the salique law, which excludes females from the supreme command.

Q. In what manner are the nobility of *France* distinguished ?

A. The nobility of *France* consist of four degrees : 1. The princes of the blood : 2 The higher nobility : 3. The ordinary nobility : 4. The nobility lately made.

Q. Who is denominated first prince of the blood ?

A. He who stands next the crown after the king's children. The dukes and counts, peers of *France*, after the princes of the blood, have the precedence among the higher nobility:

Q. How many peers of *France* were there antiently ?

A. Only

xii THE INTRODUCTION TO

A. Only 12: six ecclesiastic, and six lay peers; three of the ecclesiastics were dukes, namely, the archbishop of *Rheims*, and the bishops of *Langres*, and *Laon*; the other three ecclesiastics were counts, being the bishop of *Beauvais*, the bishop of *Chalons*, and the bishop of *Noyons*.

Q. Who were the six lay-peers?

A. The three lay-dukes, were the duke of *Burgundy*, the duke of *Normandy*, and the duke of *Guienne*; and the three counts were those of *Champagne*, *Flanders*, and *Thoulouse*. The lay-peerages have been re-united to the crown, except *Flanders*, which, at present, has another sovereign; and the kings of *France* have since created many dukes, counts, and peers, without limiting them to a certain number; who take place, according as they are registered in parliament.

Q. Of whom is the parliament of *France* composed, and who are the higher nobility?

A. Those who are dukes and peers have a right to sit in parliament, and several other privileges annexed to their peerage: but there are a great many dukes who are not peers, consequently, excluded from these privileges; yet, they are ranked among the higher nobility. All the officers of the crown also, from the chancellor to the captains of the *Guard du corps*, are in the same degree. The knights of the order of the holy ghost also are ranked with the higher nobility; likewise the governors of provinces, and lieutenants general.

Q. How are the ordinary nobility divided?

A. Into those who have been so from time immemorial, and those who have been created so by patent. If the first can shew they have enjoyed that honour a hundred years, it is sufficient to give them

THE HISTORY OF FRANCE. xiii

them the privilege of the noblesse, to exempt them from the tailles, and other taxes.

Q. What is the nobility which is obtained by being members of parliament, or of the superior courts?

A. It is only personal, and does not descend to their posterity; unless the grandfather and father have enjoyed such offices successively, and exercised them for twenty years, and died possessed of them. The crown has also granted the privilege of nobility to the aldermen and magistrates of some cities.

Q. Do the *French*, then, include all their gentry under the general title of noblesse?

A. Yes: but as for the third estate, the *Roturiers*, the most wretched of these miserable people, which comprehends their tradesmen, yeomen, and husbandmen, or peasants; they are liable to the land-tax, and many others, from which the nobility and gentry are exempted; as well as to the quartering of soldiers.

Q. What are the three orders of knighthood in *France*?

A. The order of St. *Michael*, the order of the *Holy Ghost*, and the order of St. *Lewis*. The order of St. *Michael* was instituted in 1469, by *Lewis XI.* and consisted of 36 knights at first, but has been since enlarged to 100. It is not esteemed very honourable; only it is necessary a person should be admitted of this order, before he receives that of the *Holy Ghost*.

Q. By whom, and in what year, was the order of the *Holy Ghost* instituted?

A. By

xiv THE INTRODUCTION, &c.

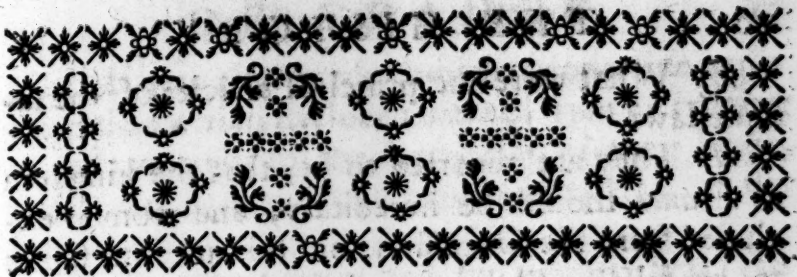
A. By *Henry III.* king of *France* and *Poland*, in 1578 ; being composed of a hundred persons, without including the sovereign ; and is conferred on princes of the blood, peers, and other great men of the first quality.

2. When was the third order, called that of *St. Lewis*, instituted ?


A. In 1693, by *Lewis XIV.* being designed purely for the encouragement of the generals and officers of the army.



THE



T H E
H I S T O R Y
O F
F R A N C E.

Q.  R O M whence can we trace the origin of the kings of *France*, and the present inhabitants of that country?

A. They originally came from *Germany*; but from what part of that vast country is uncertain: however, to facilitate the design they had formed of conquering *Gaul*, they elected *Pharamond* for their king, about the year of *Christ* 420.

Q. What were the actions of *Pharamond*?

A. They are not entirely known to us: but it is reported, that the *French*, when they elected him king, made a law, which is called the *Salique-Law*, from the proposer of it, whose name was *Saligastus*.

Q. What

Q. What were the principal articles of the *salique-law*?

A. They are reported to be, that the kingdom of *France* should be hereditary, and women excluded from the succession: but this account seems to be false. There was, indeed, a *salique-law*, but it mentions neither the hereditary succession of the government of *France*, nor of the exclusion of women from the crown; neither was it made for the disposition of the kingdom.

Q. What, then, were the motives for making this law?

A. It was made for the benefit of some particular people, and the lands they possessed; though the true origin may rather be defined, that anciently the word *Sala*, or *Sale*, signified the great house, or seat of a lord; from whence is derived the name of *Salians*, which signifies the great lords of the kingdom, who belong to the court, or the king's household; to whom the first kings, who established themselves in *Gaul*, and extended their conquests, gave lands, in proportion to their services.

Q. What were these services; and on what conditions were such lands granted to the *Salians*?

A. That they should personally serve in the wars: for which reason those lands could never be possessed by women, whose sex exempted them from bearing arms.

Q. Was this law, when first passed, expressed in these terms?

A. Yes: The words are, "That no part of the inheritance of the *salique* lands, that is, lands given to a *Salian*, should be inherited by a woman; but all land inheritance should descend to the male only."

Q. Does not this *salique-law* contain several other articles?

A. It

A. It was afterwards thought proper, to apply the article which excluded women from succeeding to *salique* lands, to the succession of their kings, and make it one of the fundamental laws of the state.

Q. At what time, and by whom, was this done?

A. We have no account of the particular æra when this law, with regard to the women succeeding to the crown of *France*, first commenced; nor is it ever quoted as a law, before the celebrated dispute, begun in 1327, between *Philip* of *Ka-lois*, and *Edward* king of *England*, who was a son of a daughter of *Philip the Fair*, and pretended to be his lawful heir.

Q. Who succeeded *Pharamond*?

A. He was succeeded by his son *Clodion*, surnamed the *Hairy*; who passed the *Rhine*, about the year 431, whilst *Aëtius*, general to the *Roman* emperor *Valentinian*, was engaged in a war against the *Goths* in *Languedoc*.

Q. What advantages did he gain over the *Roman* general in passing the *Rhine*?

A. He made himself master of the whole country, from the banks of that river as far as *Arras*, and established the seat of his empire at *Cambray*: but his residence there was not of any long continuance; for *Aëtius*, having made peace with the *Goths*, drove him back again over the *Rhine*, which he was never afterwards able to repass.

Q. Is there any thing else material, relative to the actions of *Clodion*?

A. Nothing particular; except that he gave the crown of *France* to his son *Merovius*, who again passed the *Rhine* after the death of *Aëtius*, and established the *French* monarchy in *Gaul*, about the year of *Christ* 450: it being from him the first race

race of the kings of *France* is called the *Merovingian*, which ended with *Childeric the Stupid*.

Q. What denomination was given to the second race of the kings of *France*?

A. The *Carlovingians*, from *Charles Martel*, mayor of the palace, and father of *Pepin le Bref*; or else from *Charlemagne*, the son of *Pepin le Bref*.

Q. Of what nature was that office of the mayor of the palace?

A. Under the first race of the kings of *France*, he was the principal officer, who, in the king's name, had the management of all affairs whatsoever; being somewhat similar to the present prime ministers in the courts of the *European* princes.

Q. Was not there a third race of the kings of *France*; and how is it denominated?

A. The third is called the race of the *Capets*, and is still on the throne. It began with *Hugh Capet*, and continues in the person of *Lewis XV.* now reigning.

Q. Who succeeded *Merovius*?

A. His son *Childeric*, in 457; whose vices rendered him odious to his subjects; whose wives and daughters he had debauched; which irritated them against him to such a degree, that they banished him, and elected in his place *Ægidius*, who commanded at that time in *Gaul* for the *Romans*.

Q. What became of *Childeric* afterwards?

A. He retired to *Basin* king of *Thuringia*; while *Ægidius* treated the *French* with such rigour, that, by the advice of *Guinomaud*, they repented of having made him their king, and determined to revolt a second time.

Q. Did not this give *Childeric* a favourable opportunity to re-instate himself?

A. Yes:

A. Yes : For, having advice of the usurper's behaviour, after eight years absence, *Childeric* returned into *France*, and was joyfully received by the people; who readily established him in the throne, and deposed *Ægidius*, in the year 469.

Q. What was the behaviour of *Childeric* after his restoration ?

A. He governed his people with great wisdom ; but was nevertheless ungrateful to his friend the king of *Thuringia*, who had given him a friendly asylum in his exile ; for he debauched his wife *Basine*, and carried her away with him into *France*, where he had a son by her, called *Clovis*.

Q. What other remarkable particulars occurred during the reign of *Childeric* ?

A. Towards the latter end of his reign, and about the conclusion of the fifth century, the *Roman* empire ended in the west.

Q. Was *Clovis*, since called *Lewis I.* his illegitimate son, made king of *France*, after the death of *Childeric* ?

A. Yes : He succeeded him, in 481; and made war upon *Syagrius*, the son of *Ægidius*, who took upon him the title of the king of the *French* ; because his father had been so, and kept his court at *Soissons*, the capital of what remained to the *Romans* in *Gaul*.

Q. What success had *Clovis* in this war ?

A. He vanquished *Syagrius*, who fled to *Alaric*, king of the *Goths*, at *Thoulouse* ; to whom *Clovis* sent an ambassador, to demand the body of *Syagrius*. *Alaric*, astonished at his menaces, delivered him up, and he was beheaded, by the order of *Clovis*, in the year of *Christ* 489.

Q. What other material exploits are recorded of *Clovis* ?

A. He

A. He was the greatest conqueror of his time; and, though but eleven years old when he began to reign, he, in a very little time, extended his dominions from the banks of the *Rhine*, as far as the *Loire*: He likewise carried his arms on the other side the *Rhine*, defeated *Basin*, and took *Thuringia* from the *Germans*.

Q. Of what power, and territory, were the *Germans*, at that time, possessed?

A. They inhabited a small country upon the banks of the *Rhine*, and had then but little power; though afterwards they made large conquests, and, in process of time, gave name to all that vast country now called *Germany*.

Q. What Religion did *Clovis* profess?

A. He was originally a *Pagan*; but, in an encounter he had with the *Germans*, near a place called *Tolbiac*, finding his army on the point of being vanquished, he made a vow to *Jesus Christ*, that if he would give him the victory he would be baptized.

Q. Was his prayer heard?

A. We are told, he defeated the *Germans*, in this engagement, and was afterwards baptized by *St. Remy*, bishop of *Rheims*, in the year of *Christ* 499, or 502: About which time, the name of *France*, whereby was meant what the *Franks* had conquered in *Gaul*, was first known.

Q. Is there not something extraordinary mentioned relating to the baptism of *Clovis*?

A. Some authors relate, that a dove, in the sight of many people, brought a vial, or glass bottle, down from heaven, filled with oil, to anoint him during the ceremony: but this story, broached in the infancy of christianity, is to be discarded; notwithstanding, there is a holy vial still preserved at *Rheims*, which, they say, is that brought from heaven,

heaven ; the oil of which, is used to anoint the kings of *France*, at their coronation.

Q. How did *Clovis* act after he had embraced the christian religion ?

A. Much in the same manner as his successors : he soon afterwards seized the territories of *Chararic*, a *French* prince, in possession of a small kingdom upon the banks of the *Rhine*, near *Cologne*.

Q. How did he treat *Chararic* ?

A. Having, by means of a stratagem, found a favourable opportunity of seizing this prince and his son, he commanded their hair to be cut off ; made the father a priest, and the son a deacon.

Q. What was the consequence of this command ?

A. Sometime afterwards, the son of *Chararic* happened to say, that one day his hair would grow again, and he would then be revenged of him who had cut it off : which words being told to *Clovis* ; to rid himself of all inquietude on that account, he ordered both father and son to be beheaded.

Q. Where was the affront, and what was the meaning, of ordering their hair to be cut off ?

A. This is the first time we find mention made in history, of cutting off the hair of one deprived of his estate : but it afterwards became a very common custom, with the *French*, to cut off the hair of those who had been deprived of their lands, or employments ; and then compel them to become monks and priests ; that they might never after be able to recover the possession.

Q. What was the character, and what were the latter exploits, of this fortunate prince ?

A. *Clovis* was possessed of many good qualities ; but he was guilty of two vices, which are frequently the source of the greatest crimes ; cruelty, and

and treachery ; both which he used, whenever they could be of any utility to him in his ambitious designs.

Q. What particular instances are there to justify this accusation ?

A. He had great obligations to *Chloderic*, the son of *Sygibert*, who was king, or prince of *Cologne*, and had been of great service to him, in his wars against the *Goths* ; notwithstanding which, he behaved to him with the greatest cruelty, and baseness ; for he persuaded him that his father had lived too long, and that it would be no crime to put him to death ; after which he might reign in his stead.

Q. What was the consequence of this advice ?

A. The son was wicked enough to follow this detestable council, in hopes that *Clovis* would maintain him in the sovereignty of *Cologne*, according to promise : but, immediately after the death of *Sygibert*, he seized *Chloderic*, condemned and executed him as a parricide ; then seized upon the city of *Cologne*, with all its treasures.

Q. Did *Clovis* make any other acquisitions ?

A. Yes : He had a relation, called *Regnis*, who was sovereign of *Cambray*, and the adjacent countries ; and, being desirous to become master of that city and territory, he corrupted the principal officers of that prince by the promise of a large sum of money, whereby he engaged them to betray their king ; after which, he declared war against him.

Q. What was the event of this war ?

A. *Regnis*, or *Regnacharius*, marched against him with a powerful army ; but was no sooner in sight of the enemy, than he was abandoned and betrayed by his soldiers ; who bound him in chains, and delivered him to *Clovis*.

Q. In

Q. In what manner did *Clovis* treat this prince, when he had possession of his person?

A. He reproached him with cowardice, in suffering himself to be chained, and by that means bringing an affront upon the *Merovingian* race, from which he was descended : at the same time, he gave him a blow with a battle-axe upon the head, which immediately killed him ; and put his son *Richarius* to death in the same manner.

Q. What further acts of cruelty are recorded of him?

A. He carried his cruelty so far, as to leave none of his relations alive.

Q. How long did heaven permit this wicked prince to live?

A. Not to a great age ; for he died in his 45th year, in the year of *Christ* 514, and was interred at *Paris* in the church now called *St. Genevieve*, where his tomb may be seen.

Q. What was said of him after his decease?

A. That he might be ranked among the greatest princes that ever reigned, as also in the number of the most wicked men : but it seems very surprizing, that, after so many cruel and perfidious actions, there should be some who have placed him among the saints : for though the memory of his conquests is glorious, that of his crimes is detestable.

Q. Did *Clovis* leave any issue?

A. Four sons, who divided the kingdom of *France* between them ; whose names were *Theodoric*, *Clodomire*, *Childebert*, and *Clotaire*. *Theodoric* was the eldest, but he was a bastard, being born before marriage ; and the other three he had by his wife *Clotilda*.

Q. How did these brothers divide their father's kingdom?

A. *Theodoric*

A. Theodoric had the kingdom of *Metz*: *Clodomire*, the kingdom of *Orleans*: *Childebert*, that of *Paris*: and *Clotaire*, the kingdom of *Soissons*.

Q. What were the provinces depending on each of these kingdoms?

A. All that we can collect concerning them, is, that the kingdom of *Metz*, or *Austrasia*, comprehended *Lorrain*, *Champagne*, *Auvergne*, and some other provinces in *Germany*. The kingdom of *Paris* contained the isle of *France*, *Beauce*, *Anjou*, *Maine*, *Touraine*, *Poitou*, *Guienne*, and *Languedoc*. The kingdom of *Soissons*, comprehended *Picardy*, *Normandy*, *Flanders*, and the *Low-countries*, as far as the *Rhine*. The kingdom of *Orleans* extended from *Orleans* to the source of the *Loire*, and also comprehended *Provence*, *Dauphine*, and *Savoy*.

Q. After this division of the dominions of *Clovis* among his four sons; in what situation was queen *Clotilda*, the mother of the three youngest sons?

A. She long dissembled the hatred which she bore against her uncle, *Sigismund* king of *Burgundy*; because he had put to death her father and brother; and demanded revenge upon him, from, and by the assistance of her three sons, who, being willing to espouse the cause of their mother, entered *Burgundy* with a powerful army.

Q. What was the success of their enterprize?

A. *Clodomire* having given battle to *Sigismund*, defeated him, took him prisoner, together with his wife and children, and brought them to *Orleans*.

Q. In this infancy of the christian religion, did not something extraordinary happen at that time, towards the establishment thereof?

A. We are told, that *Clodomire* after this victory, was warned by *Avit*, who was then abbot of *Micy*

Mici, and a person in great esteem for his sanctity of life, "That if he put *Sigismund* to death, he would be punished by the almighty, who would treat him in the same manner, as he did the royal prisoner."

Q. What was the behaviour of *Clodomire* to *Sigismund*, after this thundering anathema?

A. He despised his remonstrance; putting *Sigismund*, his wife, and children, to death; but, in the year following, being returned into *Burgundy* to complete his conquest, was there slain.

Q. What happened after the death of *Clodomire*?

A. His brothers *Childebert* and *Clotaire* completed that conquest, and divided the province between them. Thus ended the kingdom of *Burgundy*, in the year of *Christ* 526; after a duration of about a century, which first began under the emperors *Arcadius* and *Honorius*.

Q. In what manner were the dominions of *Clodomire* disposed of, after his decease?

A. His two brothers, *Childeric* and *Clotaire*, resolved to destroy his issue; consisting of three sons, all infants.

Q. How could they contrive to get them out of the hands of their aunt, queen *Clotilda*?

A. They sent a messenger to *Paris*, intreating *Clotilda* to send to them her nephews, that they might put them into possession of their father's kingdom.

Q. Did the aunt, who, we are informed, took great care of their preservation, comply with this request?

A. *Clotilda*, deceived by this artifice, sent them with joy; but when they had them in their possession, they sent a sword and a pair of scissars to *Clotilda*; desiring her to chuse, either the scissars to

cut off their hair, or the sword to put them to death.

Q. What answer did *Clotilda* return to this proposal?

A. She flew into a passion; and, being transported with grief, said, "That she had rather see them dead, than without their hair." Which being told to *Clotaire* and *Childebert*, the former killed two of them with his own hands; but the third, named *Clodoald*, was preserved by his governor, who foresaw the danger. After which enormous crime, *Clotaire* and *Childebert* divided the kingdom of *Orleans*, in the year of *Christ* 532.

Q. Did not these two sons of *Clovis* afterwards carry on a war in *Spain* and *Italy*?

A. They had a sister named *Clotilda*, who was married to *Amalaric* king of the *Goths*, whose subjects were at that time masters of *Spain*. *Amalaric* was an *Arian*, and treated his wife cruelly, because she was a catholic. In order, therefore, to revenge the cause of their sister, and get her out of the hands of her husband, they marched an army into *Spain*, defeated and killed *Amalaric*, and plundered the whole country; but, as they returned with these spoils to *France*, their sister *Clotilda* died upon the road.

Q. Is there no account of *Theodoric*, who was king of *Austrasia*, or *Metz*, and the eldest, though illegitimate, son of *Clovis*?

A. He reigned in peace, and governed his kingdom like a good and great prince; beloved by his subjects, and feared by his enemies.

The Merovingian Race.

CLOTAIRE I. sole king of *France*.

Q. HOW came this prince to be possessed of the whole kingdom?

A. *Clotaire*, the fourth son of *Clovis*, having survived all his brothers, and their sons, took upon him the whole government.

Q. How many children had *Clotaire*?

A. Five sons; of whom the eldest, named *Chramnus*, proved a very wicked and abandoned youth: he rebelled against his father, and fled to *Conabus*, earl of *Bretagne*; and being pursued by *Clotaire*, a battle ensued, wherein *Chramnus* was defeated, taken prisoner, and brought to *Clotaire*; who commanded him to be enclosed, with his wife and children, in a small building covered with straw, where they were burnt alive. Historians observe on this occasion, that, ever since the death of *Clovis*, *Bretagne* has been held of the Kings of *France*.

Q. How long did *Clotaire* reign sole king of *France*?

A. Three years; when he died at *Compiègne*, a small town of *Picardy*, in 564, in great perturbation of mind; uttering, in his last moments, these remarkable words, "How great is the power of the celestial king, who commands the death of one so powerful upon earth?"

Q. In what manner were the dominions of *Clotaire* disposed of, after his decease?

A. The four surviving sons divided the kingdom of their father between them: *Caribert*, was king

of *Paris*; *Chilperic* of *Sciffons*; *Gontran* of *Orleans*; and *Sigibert* of *Metz*, or *Austrasia*.

Q. Did the four brothers live in amity?

A. *Caribert* lived but a short time; and, dying without male issue, the other three divided his dominions among them: but, each of them being desirous to have the city of *Paris*, to end the dispute, they bound themselves by an oath, that no one of the three should enter it, without the permission of the others; and if any one should act contrary to this agreement, such offender should immediately lose his right thereto.

Q. Did none of them violate this oath?

A. There being an invincible hatred between *Chilperic*, and *Sigibert*, they were continually at war. At last, *Chilperic* was overcome by his brother, who seized his kingdom, and obliged him to fly to *Tournay*: but *Sigibert*, afterwards entering *Paris* in triumph, in contempt of the oath he had taken, was assassinated there by two men, who had been hired for that purpose by *Fredagonda*, the wife of *Chilperic*, in the year of Christ 579.

Q. What were the actions of *Chilperic*, after the murder of his brother?

A. He re-entered his own dominions, usurped the greatest part of those which belonged to *Sigibert*, and seized upon the city of *Paris*.

Q. What is related concerning him after this usurpation?

A. He had a favourite concubine, of great wit and beauty, who was as lascivious and abandoned, as she was cruel and perfidious: for *Chilperic* happening accidentally to discover an amour she had with the mayor of the palace, she resolved to have him assassinated; in consequence of which resolution, the same evening,

ing, on his majesty's return from hunting, accompanied only by one man on foot, he was stabbed, as he dismounted his horse, in the year of *Christ* 589.

Q. What were the qualities of *Chilperic*?

A. He was a great general; but had the greatest vices of the most wicked men: He oppressed his subjects with exorbitant taxes, which he caused to be levied with great cruelty: He shed a great deal of blood, nor had he humanity enough to spare even his own children; insomuch, that he is called, by some authors, the *Nero*, and *Herod*, of his time: But, notwithstanding these bad qualities, he took upon him to reform the doctrine of the church, with regard to the Trinity, and wrote a book, in which he said, "God was but one, and " it was ridiculous and unreasonable to say three " persons were but one God."

CLOTAIRE II. sole king of *France*.

Q. WHO succeeded *Chilperic*?

A. *Clotaire*, his son by *Fredagonda*; who was but four months old at the death of *Chilperic*.

Q. To whose care was this infant committed?

A. After the death of *Chilperic*, *Fredagonda* retired with her son to *Paris*; where, on hearing that *Childebert*, king of *Austrasia*, was marching against her with a great army, she sent to demand succours of *Gontran* king of *Orleans*; who defended her; and, after having put young *Clotaire* in possession of his father's kingdom, he took them both under his own care.

Q. Did *Gontran* live till his ward came of age?

A. No: He died before *Clotaire* was eleven years old; and, at his death, by will, left his nephew *Childebert* heir to his kingdom; who, by that means, found himself sovereign of *Austrasia*, *Orleans*, and *Paris*; for *Gontran* was in possession of two of them, having seized upon the kingdom of *Paris*, after the death of *Chilperic*; and *Childebert*, following his natural ambition, marched his army against *Fredagonda* and her son.

Q. What was the consequence of this war?

A. That princess met him with a small army, under the command of her favourite *Landric*, mayor of the palace; and, though the enemy was greatly superior in number, she put herself at the head of the troops, took her son in her arms, and shewing him to the soldiers, told them he was their king, and encouraged them to fight valiantly, which they did with such success, that *Childebert* was defeated, with the loss of 20,000 men, in the year of *Christ* 598.

Q. What became of *Childebert*, after this defeat?

A. A few days after, he and his wife died, both in one day; his mother *Brunebaut* being suspected of poisoning them; she having afterwards the government of the kingdom, as tutoress to that prince's two sons, named *Theodoric*, and *Theodebert*.

Q. What was the fate of *Fredagonda*?

A. After gaining great conquests over *Brunebaut*, and taking the city of *Paris*, into which she caused her son *Clotaire* to enter in triumph, she fell sick, and died in peace, in the year of *Christ* 601.

Q. How long did *Brunebaut* remain in amity with her grandsons?

A. Not many years; for she had sown dissensions between them, and caused them to make war

war with each other; in which *Theodebert* was defeated, and forced to take refuge in *Cologne*, where he was besieged by his brother; who insisted that the inhabitants, for the preservation of their city, should give him the head of *Theodebert*.

Q. Did they comply with his demands?

A. Yes: And instantly threw his head over the walls; after which he made himself master of his brother's dominions: but *Brunebaut*, his grandmother, would not suffer him to enjoy his conquest long; for she took an opportunity of giving him a dose of poison, of which he died in the year of *Christ* 616; leaving four sons by one concubine; out of which *Brunebaut* chose one, whom she caused to be proclaimed king, in hopes to govern the kingdom in his name.

Q. How did the people of *France* relish this imposition?

A. Weary of the dominion of so wicked a woman, they invited *Clotaire* into the kingdom, and acknowledged him for their king.

Q. Did not *Brunebaut* oppose this choice?

A. Yes; she hereupon gave him battle, but was defeated, and taken prisoner with the children of *Theodoric*; the vanquished troops, instead of taking to flight, went over to the conquerors, and *Clotaire* was established in the kingdom.

Q. After this, how did *Clotaire* use *Brunebaut*?

A. There is no certain account of his usage of her; some authors say it was cruel and shameful, others are of a contrary opinion.

Q. Describe the qualities of this princess?

A. She was guilty of great vices, but had many good qualities; and, by affecting to appear very pious and devout, she concealed her crimes. She built many churches and monasteries; by which,

she, for a long time, deceived the world, and even pope *Gregory* himself, who speaks of her as a virtuous and holy princess; but her evil deeds were not then brought to light.

Q. Did not *Clotaire II.* dispose of part of his dominions while living?

A. Having a great love for his son *Dagobert*, he gave him the kingdom of *Austrasia*, in his lifetime; when the *Saxons*, who dwelt upon the banks of the *Rhine*, despising the power of so young a king, passed that river, and gave him battle: But *Dagobert* being slightly wounded in this engagement, sent an account to his father of the danger he had escaped; in consequence of which *Clotaire* immediately marched to his assistance, with all the forces he could assemble, and pursuing *Bertoald*, duke of the *Saxons*, he spurred his horse into the *Wefer*, crossed it, and made directly towards him, being followed by great numbers of the *French*.

Q. How did he come off with this rash attempt?

A. Being mounted upon a very speedy horse, he soon came up with *Bertoald*, and struck off his head with a single stroke of his sword: But neither did the life of their general, nor the submission of the *Saxons*, appease his rage; for he afterwards put every thing to fire and sword; sparing none whom he found taller than the sword he made use of.

DAGOBERT I.

Q. WHO succeeded *Clotaire II*?

A. He dying in the forty-fourth year of his age, was succeeded by his son *Dagobert*; who,

who, in the beginning of his reign, imitated the virtues of his father; but afterwards abandoned himself to all manner of vice.

Q. Is there any thing remarkable of this prince?

A. He took it in his head to build a church two leagues from *Paris*, by the name of *St. Dennis*; to which he added a monastery for the monks of *St. Bennet*, to perform divine service therein. To enrich this church, he deprived the finest churches in *France* of all their gold and silver vessels, precious stones, and other ornaments; ordering even the gates of the church of *St. Hilary* at *Poitiers*, which were of brass, to be taken away and brought to *St. Dennis*.

Q. What was the character of *Dagobert I*?

A. He was a great prince; feared and respected by his neighbours. He had but few wars; his power and good conduct, keeping his subjects in perfect obedience, and making his friendship assiduously courted by all around him.

Q. How long did he reign?

A. Fourteen years; and, dying in the year of *Christ* 645, was interred in the church of *St. Dennis*, which he had built; and which has ever since been the common sepulchre of almost all the kings of *France*.

CLOVIS II.

Q. BY whom was *Dagobert* succeeded?

A. Before his death, he divided his kingdom between his two sons, *Sigibert* and *Clovis*: *Sigibert*, the eldest, being contented with *Austrasia*; *Clovis* had the rest of his dominions.

Q. How did the two brothers agree?

C 5

A. Very

A. Very peaceably; for they did not concern themselves at all with the affairs of their kingdoms; but left the government of them intirely to mayors of the palace; who, by that means, acquired a very great authority, which their successors made use of to put themselves in the place of their masters.

Q. Are there any memorable actions recorded of *Clovis II*?

A. One only, that is worthy of notice. A very great famine happening in *France*, he, to relieve his subjects, caused all the gold and silver shrines to be taken out of the church of *St. Dennis*, and distributed them among the poor.

Q. Did not the monks blame him for this action?

A. Yes; for though it was an action worthy of a good christian, and the policy of a wise king, yet they condemned it as criminal; saying, that he never, throughout his reign, transacted any thing worthy of a good or an honest man.

Q. What account have historians given of his brother *Sigibert*?

A. Being a long time without children, he adopted the son of *Grimoald*, the mayor of his palace; but, soon after having a son of his own, he revoked that adoption.

Q. What was the consequence of this revocation?

A. *Grimoald* poisoned *Sigibert* on account of it; and the king, not suspecting the wickedness of the traitor, with his dying breath, committed to him the care of his son, whom he had named *Dagobert*.

Q. How did the mayor of the palace behave to this infant?

A. Immediately after the death of *Sigibert*, he sent him into *Scotland*; where he caused him to be

be shaven, shut him up in a monastery, and then declared his son king.

Q. Were not the *French* incensed at these proceedings?

A. Yes; they took up arms against *Grimoald*, defeated him, made him prisoner, and condemned him to a shameful death; his son having before been slain in the battle. After this act of justice, the *Austrasians* elected for their king *Childerick II.* son of *Clovis II.* in the year of *Christ* 656.

CHILDERICK II.

Q. WAS this prince the next heir to the crown?

A. No: *Clovis II.* was succeeded by his eldest son *Clotaire III.* who dying a few months after his father, left the kingdom to his brother *Theodoric III.*

Q. How did he behave in his government?

A. His vices occasioned the *French* to drive him out of the kingdom; after which, they chose his brother *Childeric* the 2d, king of *Austrasia*, to succeed him; they also seized *Ebroin*, his mayor of the palace, a man remarkable for his cruelty, and shut him up in a monastery.

Q. How long did *Childeric* govern the kingdom?

A. Not many years; for having maltreated a person of quality, he assassinated the king as he was hunting, and executed the same vengeance upon the queen, though she was big with child.

Q. When did this happen?

A. In the year of *Christ* 679; after which *Theodoric* was established in the kingdom, from whence he had been banished; and *Ebroin* also found means to obtain the post of being mayor of the palace.

Q. Proceed

Q. Proceed with your history?

A. From the beginning of the reign of *Clovis II.* to the reign of *Pepin le Bref*, containing the space of 105 years, historians have wrote with so little order, that we find scarce any regular series of the history of *France*; but, according to them, we may remark, that ten or eleven kings reigned successively, without concerning themselves with the affairs of their kingdom; for which reason they have called them the *IDLE KINGS*.

Q. Who was the first of these indolent kings, and how did he govern?

A. The first of them was *Clovis II.* the last *Childeric the Stupid*: from whom the *French* took the crown to place it on the head of *Pepin le Bref*, his mayor of the palace, who governed the kingdom for him; while the king entirely devoted himself to a voluptuous life.

DAGOBERT II.

Q. **I**S there no account of the succession, nor of any remarkable incidents, during the respective reigns of these *Idle Kings*?

A. What we have collected, as exactly as possible, from cotemporary historians, is, that this *Dagobert II.* was the son of *Sigibert*, king of *Austrasia* beforementioned, and was very young at the death of his father.

Q. How did this young prince manage the helm of government?

A. *Grimoald* the mayor of his palace, found means to send him into *Scotland*, where he was shut up in a convent; but afterwards came into *England*, and found many protectors.

Q. Was

Q. Was this prince ever married?

A. Yes, in *England*; but, having no male issue, the whole kingdom was, at his death, united in the person of

THEODORIC II.

Q. WAS not *Ebroin* mayor of the palace to *Theodoric II*?

A. Yes, and confirmed his authority by massacring his enemies; but after some time, in the year of Christ 687, *Pepin le Gros* entered his territories with an army; and a battle ensued; after which, *Pepin* became master of the person and treasures of king *Theodoric*; and, from that time, became sovereign of all the *French*.

Q. Do not some of the ancient annalists make a particular remark on this occasion?

A. They say, that *Pepin le Gros*, began his reign in the year 687, and that the kings descended from *Pharamond*, were by him deprived of the throne; though *Pepin* pretended to reign only under the authority of king *Theodoric*.

Q. How long did *Theodoric* live?

A. He died in 691, aged 39 years, of which he reigned nineteen; leaving behind him three sons, named *Clovis*, *Childebert*, and *Clotaire*.

CLOVIS III.

Q. WHO succeeded *Theodoric*?

A. *Clovis III*. was his sole successor; but, *Pepin* being constantly mayor of the palace throughout the whole monarchy, there appears nothing

nothing singular in the reign of this prince, which was only two years; for he died without children, in the year 695, aged 19.

CHILDEBERT III.

Q. WHO became king of France after Clovis III?

A. He was succeeded by his brother *Childebert III.* surnamed the *Just*; being very remarkable for his strict justice.

Q. What became of *Pepin le Gros*, during his reign?

A. *Pepin* was constantly mayor of the palace of the kingdoms of *Neustria* and *Burgundy*, though he afterwards resigned that office in favour of his grandson *Grimbald*; and *Ratoode* king of the *Frisons*, having revolted the same year *Clovis III.* died, *Pepin* marched into his dominions, where having conquered a considerable part of them, he obliged him to return again to his duty.

Q. How long did *Childebert III.* reign?

A. He died in 711, aged 35; having reigned 17 years.

DAGOBERT III.

Q. WHO succeeded *Childebert III.*?

A. He left a son called *Dagobert*, surnamed the young; and *Pepin le Gros* continued to govern the kingdom under him as before.

Q. Did

Q. Did not *Pepin*, on this occasion, endeavour to extend his power to a greater length?

A. Yes; but he never abused it; for he always maintained the kingdom in profound peace at home, and never made war but in the territories of his enemies. He disposed of the place of mayor of the palace, as if it had been his patrimony; though, till then, it had always been elective. He bestowed many rich gifts upon the ecclesiasticks, and scarce ever oppressed the people.

Q. Was *Pepin le Gros* ever married?

A. He espoused two wives; *Plectrude*, who was of an illustrious family, and survived him; and *Alpaïda*, with whom he lived in the others life-time: by the first he had two sons, who both died before him; by the last he had *Charles Martel*, and duke *Childebrand*; from the first of whom the second race of the kings of *France* is descended.

Q. How long did *Pepin le Gros* continue mayor of the palace?

A. He died in the third year of the reign of *Dagobert*, who did not survive him above two years; but left behind him one son, named *Theodoric*, then a child.

CHILPERIC III.

Q. FROM whom was this prince descended?

A. He was the son of *Childeric II.* surnamed *Daniel*, and had been persuaded to embrace a religious life; but the *French*, having let his hair grow, placed him upon the throne after
the

the death of *Dagobert III.* and called him *Chilperic*, king of *Neustria* and *Burgundy*.

CLOTAIRE IV.

Q. FROM what family was this prince descended?

A. He was son to *Theodoric*, and brother to *Clovis III.* being also the uncle of *Dagobert* the predecessor of *Chilperic*.

Q. By what means did he ascend the throne of *Austrasia*?

A. *Charles Martel*, the eldest son of *Pepin le Gros*, having firmly established himself in *Austrasia*, and being willing to have at least a plausible pretence for continuing the war he was then engaged in, caused *Clotaire* to be proclaimed king.

Q. How long did *Clotaire* enjoy the crown?

A. About seventeen months; during which time, *Charles Martel* had defeated his Enemies the *Saxons* twice, and then returned to *Neustria*.

CHILPERIC II.

Q. WHOSE son was *Chilperic*?

A. We have no account either of his parents, or of his birth; but *Charles Martel*, being desirous to restore tranquility to the monarchy, made peace with the duke of *Aquitain*, who delivered this prince into his hands, whom *Charles Martel* acknowledged as his sovereign, and governed under him in quality of
mayer

mayor of the whole *French* monarchy, with an authority truly royal.

Q. In what did the merit of *Chilperic* III. consist?

A. He is improperly placed in the number of the *idle* kings; for he was a wise, good, and laborious prince; having maintained several wars, and fought many battles himself.

THEODORIC IV.

Q. WHO succeeded *Chilperic* III?

A. His nephew *Theodorick*, who was the son of *Dagobert* III. being only seven years old, when he came to the crown, in 721, and was surnamed *Chelles*, from his having been brought up in an abbey so called.

Q. Did *Charles Martel* continue to govern the kingdom during the minority of this prince?

A. Yes; and in a most glorious manner; for he constantly triumphed over all his enemies.

Q. What were the most remarkable transactions during the reign of this minor?

A. *Charles Martel*, during the life of this prince, was engaged in a war with the *Saracens*, whom he defeated in several battles; but, being set down before *Narbonne*, was obliged to raise the siege and return to *Paris* directly, upon advice of the death of *Theodoric*, which happened in 737, after an indolent reign of 17 years.

The INTERREGNUM from 737 to 743.

Q. What happened after the death of *Theodoric* IV.

A. He

A. He left a son named *Childeric*, so very young that he was not proclaimed king, according to a custom of which there had been examples in the reigns of the children of *Clovis*, and of which there were several since the year 1380; the *French* seldom placing their kings upon the throne till they were of age to govern.

Q. Were they not kings nevertheless?

A. The title and functions of the royal dignity remained as it were suspended, till they were of age to reign themselves; or, at least, with the advice of a council; the royal authority during their minority, being vested in the person of the regent, who sometimes took upon him the title of king, and even caused himself to be crowned, of which there are instances in the persons of *Eudes* and *Ralph*.

Q. How did *Charles Martel* behave on this occasion?

A. He undertook nothing of this sort; contenting himself with his dignity of mayor of the palace, which alone rendered him regent of the kingdom; but some time after, perceiving his authority was as firmly established as he could possibly desire it, he divided the government of the kingdom between his two sons *Carloman*, and *Pepin*; giving *Austrasia* to the first; to the other *Neustria*, *Burgundy*, and *Provence*.

Q. How long did *Martel* live after this division?

A. But a few years; for, either from an effect of the fatigues of war, or from the failures of old age, after a long sickness, he died at *Quiers* upon the *Oise*, on the twenty second of *October* 741, and was buried in the church of *St. Dennis*.

Q. How did his two sons agree about their respective dominions, as assigned by their father?

A. The

A. The division which he had made, occasioned some troubles in the kingdom of *Burgundy*; but they were soon appeased by *Pepin*, and prince *Childebrand* his uncle.

Q. Had *Charles Martel* no more children?

A. He had been married twice; the name of his first wife was *Rotruda*, by whom he had *Carloman*, *Pepin*, *Bernard*, and *Jerome*, all sons; *Adelage*, and *Heldetruda*, daughters: by his second wife he had one son, called *Griffon*; but *Carloman* and *Pepin*, were solely concerned in the government.

Q. How long did *Martel* manage the government?

A. Thirty-six years.

Q. What were the qualities of this great man?

A. He was undoubtedly the wonder of his age. His ability was equally superior in council and in the field to any of his contemporaries; his industry indefatigable, and his diligence such as surprized the world; for he never lost an opportunity of advantage. He was seen with his armies to traverse the vast *French* monarchy from one end to the other, and to fall upon his enemies when they thought him at a great distance. He was always the first to fight, and the last to fly. The weight of his blows upon his enemies, whenever they fell into his hands, acquired him the surname of *Martel*; nevertheless, if we except his wars against *Childeric III.* and *Theodoric IV.* he scarce ever fought but for the christian faith: he was so much the scourge of the heathen *Frisons*, and mahometan *Saracens*, that we may venture to say, had it not been for his assistance, and the *French* under his command,
the

the christians would have run a great risk of being compelled to embrace mahometism.

Q. Did he convert any of the nations he conquered to the christian faith?

A. He contributed greatly to the conversion of the *Frisons*, *Thuringians*, and several other nations on that side the *Rhine*: besides, he put a stop to the enterprizes of the *Lombards* upon the *Roman* church, by his command alone.

Q. Was he not in great favour with the clergy on this occasion?

A. Notwithstanding this, the priests say he was damned; and the council of *Kiersy* assembled in 859, or rather *Hinkmar*, who was in a manner the president of it, has dared to aver that his body was carried to hell, and that nothing was found in his grave except a hideous serpent.

Q. From what occasion did this ridiculous fable arise?

A. It was founded upon an account given by *St. Eucher* of *Orleans*, whom he had banished, to intimidate the great in succeeding ages; who, perceiving the ecclesiasticks become too rich for the poor and humble disciples of Christ, might, perhaps, examine the titles of their possessions, and seize upon such, as they should find not very lawfully acquired.

Q. How did *Martel's* two sons employ their power, after the death of their father, and during the interregnum?

A. *Carloman*, being mayor of the palace of *Austrasia*, and *Pepin le Bref* of *Neustria*, they took possession of the government of the *French* monarchy; which, at that time, was in a most deplorable condition, with respect to the clergy, who were almost in a general confusion and disorder.

CHILDERIC

CHILDERIC III.

Q. HOW long had *France* been without a king, publickly acknowledged, and proclaimed such, before *Childeric III*?

A. From the year 737, till the end of the summer in 743.

Q. How came it to pass that this prince was proclaimed?

A. The two mayors, *Carloman* and *Pepin*, being returned from the war, in which they had been engaged against the duke of *Bavaria* in *Germany*, they placed *Childeric III*. the son of *Chilperic II*. upon the throne, but kept the government intirely to themselves; *Childeric* not being above twelve years old.

Q. What was the consequence of this union?

A. Two years afterwards, *Carloman* retired to *Rome*, where he built an abbey, and shut himself up in it; by which retreat, *Pepin* became sole mayor of the palace throughout the monarchy.

Q. Did any thing more remarkable happen during the reign of *Childeric*?

A. The *French* enjoyed a profound peace during the years 750 and 751; about which time, *Childeric* finding himself infirm, and willing to devote himself intirely to the service of God, abdicated the throne, with the consent of his great vassals, and retired to the abbey of *St. Dennis* in 752, where he died two years afterwards.

Q. How long did he reign?

A. He had reigned but nine years when he abdicated, and was only in the 23d year of his age when he died: being the last of the *Merovingian* kings, whose race had filled the throne for 335 years;

years ; reckoning from 417, which is the common epocha of the beginning of the *French* monarchy.

The Carolingian Race.

PEPIN LE BREF.

Q. WHO succeeded *Childeric III*?

A. *Pepin* assembled the states at *Soissons* ; where his friends, having extolled the great actions he had atchieved, and the wisdom he had shewn in the government of the kingdom, proposed to place him upon the throne.

Q. How was this proposition received by the *French*?

A. They placed *Pepin* upon a buckler, according to custom, and proclaimed him king, in the year 751 : whereby the crown passed from the *Merovingians* to the *Carlovingians*.

Q. What was the consequence of this election?

A. *Pepin* immediately abolished the place of mayor of the palace, well knowing, by his own experience, that it made a subject too powerful ; but it was re-established towards the end of the second race, by the name of duke, or prince of the *French*, and was attended with the same inconveniencies.

Q. Was *Pepin* engaged in any wars after his accession to the throne?

A. He made war against *Astulphus*, king of the *Lombards*, in favour of the pope, and took from him the exarchat of *Ravenna*, of which he made himself master ; he was also engaged in
several

several other wars, of which the most considerable was against *Vaisarius*, which terminated in the entire conquest of all *Aquitain*.

Q. Did not the continual wars *Pepin* was engaged in, prevent him from superintending the affairs of religion?

A. No; for there reigned in the east at this time a sect of heretics called *Iconoclasts*, or image-breakers, which beginning to appear in *France*, *Pepin* assembled a synod, wherein he caused the question concerning the worshipping of images to be examined, and condemned the heresy, which tended to abolish the use of them.

Q. Was not this action a proof of the authority the *French* kings naturally had to assemble synods, for the regulation of matters of faith?

A. Most certainly; the same thing having been practised before by the kings of the first race, and since by their successors.

CHARLEMAGNE.

Q. **W**H O succeeded *Pepin le Bref*, in the kingdom of *France*?

A. When he died, he divided it between his two sons, *Charles* and *Carloman*; giving *Austrasia*, which was the most considerable part, to *Charles*; who, from his great actions, was afterwards called *Charlemagne*.

Q. Is there any thing memorable recorded of *Carloman*?

A. No; he lived but a short time, leaving at his death two sons; nevertheless, *Charlemagne* found means to make himself master of the whole kingdom.

Q. What were the exploits of *Charlemagne*?

A. He

A. He marched into *Italy* to the assistance of pope *Adrian*, and defeated the forces of *Didier* king of the *Lombards*; went to *Rome*, where he confirmed the donation of several lands given by his father to the holy see, and the pope in recompence gave him the title of *Patrician*. He besieged *Pavia*, and obliged the king of the *Lombards*, who was shut up therein, to surrender at discretion; whereupon all *Italy* submitted to him, of which he caused himself to be proclaimed king, and put an end to the kingdom of the *Lombards*, two hundred years after its establishment, in the year of Christ 773.

Q. Was there not something remarkable in the ceremony of his coronation?

A. He caused himself to be inaugurated with a crown of iron.

Q. Was there no reason for his having it of this metal?

A. It must be, because it was the custom of the kings of the *Lombards*, who might have taken it from the *Goths*, formerly masters of *Italy*; and, perhaps, these last designed this metal, as a mark of the strength and courage of the nation: be that as it will, the crown is still preserved in a small village of the *Milanese*, called *Modatia*.

Q. What farther exploits are there recorded of *Charles the Great*?

A. Having subjected all *Germany*, *Hungary*, *Esclavonia*, *Italy*, *Denmark*, and almost all *Spain* to his empire; he caused himself to be crowned emperor of the west by the pope; his power being so very formidable to all *Europe*, that the emperor of the east also acknowledged him by that title, and called him *Augustus*, in the year of Christ 801.

Q. How

Q. How did *Charlemagne* employ himself, after he had acquired this dignity?

A. Very assiduously, in regulating both the ecclesiastical and political state of his empire; for which purpose, he made the ordinances, now called the *Chapters of Charlemagne*.

Q. Had this great monarch no associate in the management of public affairs?

A. Being enfeebled with age, and continual labours, he resolved to associate his son *Lewis* in the empire, to ease himself of the burden. With this design, he assembled the grandees of the empire, which assembly was called the parliament, at *Aix la Chapelle*, his usual residence, to whom he declared his resolution. After which, he put on his imperial robes; and, having placed the crown upon an altar, commanded his son to take it, and put it upon his own head.

Q. For what reason was this done?

A. To shew his son, that the sovereign authority descended to him from God, and not from men; in the year of Christ 813.

Q. Had *Charlemagne* no more sons?

A. No more alive at that time; but he gave the kingdom of *Italy* to his grandson, *Bernard*, son of *Pepin* the eldest, who was dead.

Q. How long after did this great emperor live?

A. He died the year following, at *Aix la Chapelle*, in the 71st year of his age; and was interred in the church of that city, which he had built, as well as many others.

Q. What was his character?

A. He was placed among the number of saints, and his feast is still celebrated in *France*; while, on the same day, they perform divine service with great solemnity in the cathedral of *Metz*, for the repose of his soul; which shews, that,

D

after

after his death, all persons were not thoroughly persuaded of his sanctity. He had many great virtues; but more of those which constitute a great monarch, than a holy saint.

Q. Was there any thing else, remarkable under his reign?

A. We find the place of *Constable* established in his time; though it was not at that height of power and grandeur to which it has since arrived: nevertheless, it was a considerable employment; for whoever was *Constable*, was also commander of the royal armies. He was also called *Comes Stabuli*, that is, count, or intendant, of the king's stables; as we are informed by *Adelmus*, upon the year 807.

Q. What was the state of the western empire, from *Charles Martel* to the death of *Charlemagne*?

A. Whilst *Charles* governed the kingdom in quality of mayor of the palace, *Leo III.* surnamed the *Iconoclast*, was emperor in the east, who died in the year of Christ 766; being succeeded by his son *Leo*, who died also without doing any thing considerable; leaving for his successor *Constantine VII.*, at that time a child, and under the care of his wife *Irene*; who, when her son came of age, refused to quit the government.

Q. Did not her refusal occasion an irreconcilable enmity between the mother and son?

A. Yes; but she, having more address than the son, gained over the guards to her party, who seized upon *Constantine*, and put out his eyes, of which he died, in the year of Christ 799.

Q. How did *Irene* maintain herself in the empire?

A. She

A. She sent an ambassador to *Charlemagne*, with propositions of a marriage between them, and by that means to unite the eastern and western empires; but, before this marriage could be concluded, the queen was deprived of her empire by the *Greeks*.

2. Who did the *Greeks* chuse for emperor?

A. *Nicephorus*, who concluded a peace and alliance with *Charlemagne*; in which he acknowledged him emperor of the east, and stiled him *Augustus*.

LEWIS LE DEBONNAIRE.

2. TO whom did the empire of the west, and the kingdom of *France*, devolve, after the death of *Charlemagne*?

A. *Lewis*, immediately after his father's decease, repaired to *Aix la Chapelle*, and was there proclaimed emperor and king.

2. In what did the ceremony of his coronation consist?

A. In the pope's placing a crown of gold, enriched with diamonds, first upon his head, and afterwards on that of his wife *Hirmengarda*, during the celebration of mass.

2. For what reason was this prince surnamed the *Debonnaire*?

A. From his good natured disposition, and clemency; by which rare qualities, he gained the *Saxons*, and rendered them faithful to him.

2. What issue had *Lewis*?

A. Three sons; *Lothaire*, *Pepin*, and *Lewis*; and his love for them determined him to assemble the parliament at *Aix la Chapelle*; in which, having declared his design of associating his eldest

son in the empire, he placed the crown upon his head himself ; at the same time, making *Pepin* king of *Aquitain*, and *Lewis* king of *Bavaria*.

Q. What were the consequences of these promotions ?

A. After *Lothaire* had been associated in the empire with his father, he was invited to *Rome* by pope *Paschal*, who crowned him upon *Easter Sunday* at the celebration of mass ; but, soon after, *Lothaire* being informed of a barbarous action committed by the said pope, he sent the reason of it to his father.

Q. What have historians inferred from hence ?

A. That it is evident, from the whole of this affair, the kings of *France* were judges of the conduct, and behaviour of the popes, and sovereigns of *Rome* ; in quality of kings of *Italy*.

Q. Had they also, at this time, an absolute authority over the election of popes ?

A. Certainly, which plainly appeared for many years after ; for when *Gregory IV.* was elected by the clergy and people of *Rome*, advice of it was sent to the emperors ; and he was not consecrated till after they had sent persons to examine the legality of his election, and given their approbation thereof ; which was done in the year of Christ, 828.

Q. Had *Lewis* no more children than the three sons abovementioned ?

A. Yes ; he was married a second time to *Judith*, his relation, daughter of the duke of *Bavaria* ; by whom he had a son named *Charles*, who was afterwards surnamed the *Bald*.

Q. What provision did he make for this son ?

A. *Judith* having an absolute power over the will of her husband, and passionately desiring to aggrandize her son, caused the emperor to assemble

ble the parliament at *Worms*, and to declare *Charles* king of *Germany*; after which, she deprived all the grandees from having any share in the government of the empire.

Q. Did not these disorders of the state incense the lords of the empire against her, and put them upon measures to seek redress?

A. They immediately united, and espoused the interests of *Lothaire*, and his brothers, who made this the plausible pretence for conspiring against their father; whereupon *Pepin* seized upon the empress *Judith*, obliged her to take the veil, and go into the abbey of the holy cross at *Poitiers*.

Q. What became of the emperor *Lewis*, during this unnatural rebellion?

A. *Lothaire*, being returned from *Spain*, and finding an open revolt against his father, seized upon him, shut him up in the monastery of *St. Medard* at *Soissons*, and took the government of the empire upon himself; in the year of Christ 829.

Q. How long did *Lewis* remain in confinement?

A. A monk, named *Gombaut*, belonging to the abbey where the emperor was shut up, undertook to restore him to his liberty: with this design, he went to *Pepin* king of *Aquitain*, and *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, representing to each of them, that their brother *Lothaire* had usurped all the sovereign authority, without suffering them to partake with him; and that they had committed a horrid crime in deposing their father, which they could not otherwise make reparation for, but by his re-establishment.

Q. How did this scheme succeed?

A. The two princes, already weary of the dominion of their brother, gave ear to the proposition, took up arms against him, released their father, and put him again in possession of the empire, marching with him against *Lothaire*, who was obliged to surrender himself, with all his accomplices.

Q. How did the old emperor use *Lothaire* for his disobedience, when he got him into his own possession?

A. He pardoned him; but delivered his adherents to the officers of justice, by whom they were condemned to death; though *Lewis* reversed that sentence, and contented himself with confining them in monasteries.

Q. In what manner did *Lewis* behave, after his restoration?

A. The wickedness of his sons, and his too great affection for *Charles*, occasioned a second revolt, in which his three sons united against him, and took to their assistance those who had been confined in the monasteries as a punishment for their former rebellion.

Q. Did not the emperor march an army against them?

A. Yes; but they found means to corrupt his troops, and he was obliged to deliver himself, together with *Judith* his wife, and his son *Charles*, to his rebellious children.

Q. To the care of which of his sons was *Lewis* committed?

A. To *Lothaire*, who kept him prisoner; and, in the mean time, assembled the parliament at *Champigne*, before whom the emperor *Lewis*, being accused of several crimes, was condemned and deposed: not contented with this, *Lothaire* took

took away his sword, divested him of his robes, made him put on the habit of a monk, and then shut him up in a monastery.

Q. After being thus solemnly deposed, was *Lewis* ever again restored to the empire?

A. The *Germans* appeared so full of indignation at the injustice committed upon the emperor *Lewis le Debonnaire*, that his son *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, protested it was done against his will, and resolved to take up arms for his re-establishment: accordingly, he sent to his brother *Pepin* to join him, and compel *Lothaire* to restore their father his liberty and empire.

Q. Did *Pepin* comply with this request?

A. Yes; he marched at the head of an army towards *Paris*, whilst *Lewis* did the same with the *Germans*, and were joined during their march by most of the lords of the empire; so that *Lothaire* retired into *Burgundy*, leaving his father and brother *Charles*, at liberty at *St. Dennis*, where they had been confined: but the emperor's army, being composed of all the forces of the empire, pursued *Lothaire*, and took him prisoner.

Q. In what manner did his father punish him for his continued disobedience?

A. Soon after, *Lothaire* obtained leave to come to his father at *Worms*, where he had assembled the parliament, when he cast himself at his feet before them, imploring forgiveness; which so touched the heart of the good emperor, that he not only pardoned him; but added new territories to his former dominions.

Q. Were not *Lewis* and *Pepin* offended at this liberality?

A. *Pepin* died about this time; leaving two sons: but *Lewis* highly resented it, and this resentment was increased by his father giving the

kingdom of *Aquitain* to *Charles* the son of *Judith*, without bestowing any thing on *Lewis*.

Q. How did *Lewis* behave on this occasion?

A. He immediately retired from the court of his father, and took up arms, to do himself justice for the wrong which he pretended had been done to him; but the good emperor was so chagrined at this, that it occasioned his death, which happened at *Mayence*, in the 64th year of his age, and in the year of Christ 840; his interment being in the abbey of *St. Arnold* at *Metz*.

Q. What were the qualities of this emperor?

A. He had sense and penetration enough; but he wanted that firmness and courage so necessary to a prince, that would preserve absolute authority over his subjects. He was good natured to a fault, and his clemency was too great.

Q. Who became emperor of the west, and king of *France*, after the death of *Lewis le Debonnaire*?

A. *Lothaire*, his eldest son, who was extremely ambitious, and instantly determined, to make himself master of the territories of his brother *Charles*; but it being the interest of *Lewis* king of *Bavaria*, to prevent his elder brother from becoming too powerful, he joined *Charles* to oppose his designs.

Q. What was the consequence of this alliance?

A. The three brothers being in arms, a furious battle was fought between them, at *Fontenay* in *Auxerrois*. A hundred thousand men were left dead upon the field; *Lothaire* was defeated, and forced to fly; and at last compelled to come to an agreement with his brothers, by which a new division of the *French* empire was made between them.

Q. What

Q. What were the respective territories allotted to each, on this partition?

A. *Charles* had east *France*, or that part, which then was, and is still called *France*. *Lewis* had west *France*, otherwise called *Germany*; comprehending all which now goes under that name, and was from thence called the *Germanic*. The emperor *Lothaire* had the kingdom of *Italy*, *Provence*, and *Austrasia*; the latter of which then comprehended what is at present called the three bishopricks, and the *Low Countries*. From this time, the name of *Austrasia* was lost; all these countries being called, from *Lothaire*, *Lotharingia*; from whence, by corruption, is derived the word *Lorrain*; and this happened in the year of Christ 843.

Q. Was there any continuance of peace between the three brothers, after this division?

A. No: they soon took up arms, and made war upon each other, in a most cruel manner; the *Normans*, taking advantage of these civil dissensions, entered *France*, by coming up the *Seine*, even as far as *Paris*: they plundered the abbey of *St. Germain des Prez*, then returned into *Friesland*, where they had established themselves with the booty; but at last, *Charles*, having assembled a numerous army, besieged them in *Angers*, compelled them to surrender, and made them purchase permission to return into their own country, by paying him a large sum of money.

Q. How were *Lewis* and *Lothaire* employed, during these exploits of their half brother *Charles*?

A. *Lewis* reigned peaceably twenty years, without doing any thing considerable. *Lothaire*, weary of life, quitted the empire; leaving to his eldest son *Lewis* the kingdom of *Italy*; and to his

second son *Lothaire* he left the province of *Lorraine*, after which, he retired into a monastery, put on the habit of a monk, and died soon after, in the year of Christ 855.

Q. Is there any thing more remarkable, recorded of the emperor *Lothaire*?

A. As he passionately loved his concubine *Waldrada*; he caused the marriage with the queen his wife, to be dissolved by a synod of bishops, assembled at *Aix la Chapelle*, upon a false accusation of adultery; after which, he espoused the former.

Q. Was not the sentence of this synod afterwards reversed by the pope?

A. Yes; by *Nicholas I.* who excommunicated *Waldrada*, and menaced *Lothaire* with excommunication also, if he did not retake his wife *Teutpergo*; to appease whom, the emperor solemnly swore he had quitted *Waldrada*, and would never see her more.

Q. What have historians observed from hence?

A. That this is the first time the popes took the liberty of interfering in the affairs of the kings of *France*; and that the authority with which the pope acted in this affair, was occasioned by the disagreement at that time subsisting between the kings, each of them being desirous to gain the pope, who, taking advantage of their discords, began to assume an authority unknown to his predecessors.

Q. How long did *Lothaire* live after this?

A. He died, in a miserable manner, the same year, before he left *Italy*, in the year of Christ 868.

CHARLES the BALD,

Emperor, and king of *France*.

Q. WHO succeeded the emperor *Lewis*, eldest son of *Lothaire*?

A. *Charles*, surnamed *the Bald*, having advice that *Lewis* was dead without male issue, immediately went into *Italy*, gained the pope by dint of money, and caused himself to be crowned emperor and king of *Italy*, in exclusion of his nephew *Carloman*, the son of *Lewis the Germanic*, who came into *Italy* with the same design, in 876.

Q. What was the conduct of this emperor in the opening of his reign?

A. To shew his superiority over kings, he erected the kingdom of *Arles*, which comprehended all *Provence* and part of *Dauphiné*; and appointed *Boson* to be king of it.

Q. Was not *Carloman* highly provoked at his uncle's supplanting him?

A. He took up arms to be revenged, but soon after made peace with him; then, turning his arms against pope *John VIII.* who had crowned *Charles* emperor, he entered *Italy*, and fell upon the lands of the church, which were at that time also attacked by the *Saracens*.

Q. Did not the pope send for *Charles* to come to his assistance?

A. Yes, and he went accordingly. We are ignorant what he did there; but, upon his return through

through the *Alps*, he was treacherously poisoned by *Sedecias*, a Jew, and his physican, in the year of Christ 878.

LEWIS the STAMMERER,
Emperor, and king of *France*.

Q. WHO succeeded *Charles the Bald*?

A. His son *Lewis*, surnamed the *Stammerer*; who, to gain the affection of the great men of the kingdom, whom he found more inclined to the kings of *Germany* than himself, distributed to some earldoms, to others abbies, and to others dutchies; which was the original of all those dutchies, earldoms, and lordships, dismembered from the crown, and erected into separate sovereignties; such as the dutchy of *Aquitain*, the earldoms of *Holland*, *Main*, *Anjou*, and many more.

Q. What were his exploits?

A. The merit of this prince occasioned great things to be expected from him; but he had scarce reigned a year, when he fell sick, and died at *Compeigne*; having ordered his eldest son *Lewis* to be crowned king, in the year of Christ 880.

LEWIS and CARLOMAN.

Q. WAS *Lewis* crowned king after his father's decease?

A. The

A. The grandees, to preserve peace in the royal house, resolved to crown his brother *Carloman* with him.

Q. How did these two brothers agree?

A. They reigned together very peaceably; for when *Boson*, king of *Arles*, had openly revolted, they assembled an army, and marched against him; after having reduced him to obedience, they turned their arms against the *Normans*, who, having conquered *Neustria*, ravaged all *France*: but the two kings defeated them several times, and made them twice raise the siege of *Paris*.

Q. How long did these two princes reign?

A. But a short time. *Lewis* died in the third, and *Carloman* in the fifth year of his reign; the latter being in the year of *Christ* 885.

CHARLES the GROSS,
Emperor, and king of *France*.

Q. HAD this prince any legal claim to the crown?

A. No: *Charles the simple* was lawful heir; but being a child, and the *French* having need of a vigorous prince to oppose the *Normans*, they elected the emperor *Charles the gross* for their king.

Q. How long did he reign in *France*?

A. About two years after his election, he fell into a disorder of mind, which obliged the *French* to chuse another king: and the *Germans* appointed *Arnold*, his nephew, bastard of *Carloman* the *Germanic*, to be his guardian, and to govern the empire in his stead.

Q. Was

Q. Was *Arnold* contented with the title of *guardian*?

A. He took the title of emperor, and allowed his uncle so poor a pittance for his subsistence, that he had scarce enough to keep him alive.

Q. How was he affected by this usage of his nephew?

A. He died a few months after, being the last king of *France* that was emperor; though the empire did not yet depart from the family of *Charlemagne*.

Q. What was doing in *France*, during this changing of their kings?

A. One *Ralph*, nephew of *Bosan* king of *Arles*, declared himself king of *Burgundy*, and was maintained in the usurpation of it by the emperor *Arnold*; in which manner the second kingdom of *Burgundy* was established in the year of *Christ* 890.

Q. Is there any certain account what this kingdom of *Burgundy* first comprehended?

A. No: but *Arles* was now united with it, and the two made one; which was indifferently called the kingdom of *Burgundy*, or the kingdom of *Arles*, and at that time comprehended *Provence*, *Savoy*, *Viennois*, and that part of *Burgundy* situate near *St. Claude*, which is now called the county of *Burgundy*.

Q. Was not the dutchy of *Burgundy* comprehended in this kingdom?

A. No: for there were, at the same time, a king of *Burgundy*, and a duke of *Burgundy*.

Q. How long did this kingdom subsist?

A. Only 144 years; and from its ruins, soon after the beginning of the eleventh century, were formed the provinces of *Burgundy*, *Provence*, *Viennois*, and *Savoy*.

CHARLES

CHARLES the SIMPLE.

Q. HOW came *Charles the Simple*, whom the *French* had before rejected, to be now set upon the throne?

A. As *Charles the Gross*, from the weakness of his understanding, became incapable of governing the state, the people had recourse to this their lawful king; and appointed *Eudes*, earl of *Paris*, to be his governor.

Q. How did *Eudes* behave towards this young prince?

A. Historians are not agreed concerning his conduct towards the king, of whom he was governor; but it is certain he reigned ten years, and did not restore the kingdom to *Charles the simple* till his death, which happened in the year of *Christ* 900.

Q. Is there any thing remarkable recorded of *Eudes*?

A. He is said to be the first who took for arms a shield covered with an uncertain number of *flower de lucas*, which were preserved till the time of *Philip de Valois*, or *Charles IV.* who reduced them to three only.

Q. How came *Charles*, son of *Lewis the Stammerer*, to be surnamed the *Simple*?

A. Some say, from the weakness of his understanding; though others say, he had sense and courage sufficient, but that he acquired this name, towards the end of his Reign, for suffering himself to be too easily deceived by *Heribert*, earl of *Vermandois*, against whose treachery he ought to have been upon his guard; as it was the cause of his death.

Q. How

Q. How did *Charles* deal with the *Normans*, who were now so thoroughly established in *France*?

A. They were grown so formidable, that he judged it most prudent to make peace with them; which was concluded on condition, that *Rhollo*, or *Rhou*, duke or prince of the *Normans*, should embrace christianity, and then should espouse *Gisle*, or *Gillette*, the king's daughter; who, for her dowry, should have all *Neustria*, of which the *Normans* had been in possession for some years, and that they should render homage for it to the king: in which manner *Neustria* was given to the *Normans*, and from them called *Normandy*; being in the beginning of the tenth century.

Q. Had *Rhollo* any children by *Gisle*?

A. No: but, nevertheless, his son *William*, surnamed *Longshanks*, succeeded to the duchy of *Normandy*; because it had been given to *Rhollo*, and his posterity.

Q. What were the qualities of *Rhollo*?

A. He was a prince of great merit; and principally made himself beloved and respected by his subjects, for his exemplary justice.

RODOLPH OR RALPH,

Duke of *Burgundy*, elected king of *France*.

Q. OF what family was *Rodolph*?

A. He was either grandson, or nephew, to *Bosan* king of *Arles*, and at that time king or duke of *Burgundy*.

Q. By what means did he ascend the throne?

A. *Hugh*, surnamed the *Great*, the grandson of *Eudes*, was so well beloved by the *French*, that

they resolved to make him their king after the death of *Charles the simple*; but, he refusing to be elevated to that dignity, they elected *Rodolph*, who was crowned and consecrated at *Soissons*.

Q. How long did he reign?

A. Almost thirteen years, and was all that time engaged in suppressing the continual revolts of *Herebert*. After the death of *Rodolph*, *Hugh* still refusing to be king, and not approving of his brother *Herebert* to be so, *Lewis*, son of *Charles the simple*, was recalled from *England*, where his mother had fled with him after the death of her husband.

Q. Who was the chief of this embassy?

A. *William* archbishop of *Sens*, who brought back the young prince with him. Thus *Lewis IV.* was restored to the kingdom of his father, and consecrated at *Laon*, by the archbishop of *Rheims*, in the year 937; being surnamed *D'Outremer*, because he came from beyond the sea. In this manner, the empire was transferred from the race of *Charlemagne*, to the *Teutonic* princes.

Q. Who were the *Teutons*?

A. They were a nation sprung from the *Cimbri*, who had established themselves in *Germany* before the race of *Charlemagne*; and all the *German* princes, that were not of the race of *Charlemagne*, were of this nation.

LEWIS IV. surnamed D'OUTREMER.

Q. HOW long did *Lewis IV.* reign?

A. Eighteen years; during which time, he was engaged in continual wars with the *Normans*, and with *Hugh the great*, who made use
of

of the *Normans*, to divide the king's forces from falling entirely upon himself.

Q. What success had *Lewis* against the *Normans*?

A. At first it was very good, the principal places having surrendered to him; but afterwards, imprudently entering into a small village with only a few followers, the *Normans* perceiving themselves the more numerous, seized him, and kept him prisoner, till he restored to them all his conquests in *Normandy*.

Q. What was the character of *Lewis IV*?

A. He had great courage, but little prudence; for instead of gaining the affection of *Hugh*, who was more powerful than himself, he declared him his enemy, which occasioned continual wars and disputes between them.

Q. Where did *Lewis* die?

A. He fell sick, and died at *Rheims*, in the year of *Christ* 956.

LOTHAIRE II.

Q. WHAT male issue did *Lewis IV*. leave him?

A. Two sons; *Lothaire*, and *Charles*.

Q. Did the queen their mother survive her husband?

A. Yes: but, seeing the kingdom divided, and not thinking her self able to preserve it for her children, she had recourse to *Hugh* himself; and, knowing he had a great soul, she put the two princes under his protection.

Q. How was this dowager queen, and her two sons, received by *Hugh the great*?

A. With

A. With the highest respect and affection : his truly generous disposition caused *Lothaire* to be crowned, and he himself was his tutor ; but *Charles*, the younger brother, remained destitute of any portion ; a thing till then unexampled ; the children of the preceding kings, having always divided the kingdom of their father between them.

Q. How long after this truly honourable action did *Hugh* live ?

A. After he had settled the sovereign authority in *Lothaire*, and put the kingdom in the best condition it was possible, he died, extremely old, and was buried in *St. Dennis*.

Q. How came it to pass, that he is so frequently called in history, *Hugh the abbot* ?

A. He possessed the abbies of *St. Dennis*, *St. Germain des Prez*, and *St. Martin de Tours* ; it being the custom of those times, for the great lords to possess the abbies, from father to son, as a particular inheritance.

Q. How was *Charles* the younger brother of *Lothaire* provided for ?

A. During the life time of *Lothaire II.* the emperor *Otho I.* usurped *Lorraine* from *France* ; and *Otho II.* his son and successor, seeing *Lothaire* was making preparations to retake it, gave it as a dutchy dependant upon the empire, to *Charles*, who, as has been before observed, had nothing given him at the death of his father.

Q. Did not this liberality of *Otho* occasion animosities between the two brothers ?

A. *Otho* designed it for this purpose ; for he thereby firmly attached *Charles* to his interest, and service : but this attachment of his to the *Germans* estranged from him the affections of the *French*,
and

and was the cause of his being deprived of the succession to the crown.

Q. Was *Lothaire* possessed of the dutchy of *Lorrain* by this stratagem?

A. He attempted to recover it, and did so; but, a few months after the emperor *Otho* II. compelled him to quit all his conquests, and pursued him, with an army of 60,000 men, as far as the city of *Paris*, which he besieged, after having ravaged the whole country.

Q. Did the emperor *Otho* take that city?

A. The taking of it appearing to him impossible, he raised the siege after a few months; when *Lothaire* pursued him, and in the retreat defeated his rear-guard near *Soissons*.

Q. What was the consequence of this defeat?

A. A peace immediately ensued. *Lothaire* renounced his pretensions to *Lorrain*, and the emperor confirmed his donation of it to *Charles*.

Q. How long did *Lothaire* II. reign?

A. Thirty years, and died in the year of *Christ* 986; being succeeded by his son *Lewis* V. whom he had associated with him in his kingdom ten years before.

LEWIS V.

Q. **I**s there any thing remarkable of *Lewis* V?

A. He reigned but one year after the death of his father, and died without issue; leaving no memorial of himself, except that he was the last of the race of *Charlemagne*.

The race of the CAPETS ; being the third race of the kings of France, now upon the throne .

HUGH CAPET.

First king of the third race.

Q. AS *Lewis V.* died without issue, did not the kingdom of *France*, by right of inheritance, belong to his uncle *Charles*, duke of *Lorraine*, son of *Lewis D'Outremer* ?

A. Yes : certainly ; but whether absence had occasioned him to be neglected ; or whether he was become odious to the *French*, for receiving *Lorraine* of the emperor, on condition to pay him homage, and for having attached himself to the *Germans* ; they elected *Hugh Capet*, son of *Hugh the great* ; who usurped the crown against their lawful prince.

Q. Did not *Charles*, by force of arms, endeavour to put himself in possession of the kingdom afterwards ?

A. Yes : but he was defeated, and taken prisoner by *Hugh*, who shut him up in a prison at *Orleans*, where he ended his days. After this victory, *Hugh* was crowned, and consecrated at *Rheims* ; and six months after, he caused his son *Robert* to be crowned also, that he might be sure to succeed him, in the year of *Christ* 987.

Q. As we have seen, how, under the emperor *Lewis the stammerer*, the several duchies, and earldoms, were dismembered from the crown ; what was their authority in the reign of *Hugh Capet* ?

A. There

A. There was scarce a single lord, in his time, who had not erected his lordship into a sovereignty, or usurped some seignory from the crown.

Q. Did not this greatly diminish the power of the king of *France*, from what it had been formerly?

A. Yes : but, nevertheless, he was still looked upon as the first king in *Europe*; and was also called by some foreign historians *the king of kings*.

Q. What were the titles of the great men then in use?

A. Duke, and count only : the title of baron being common to all the lords of the kingdom, who were in general called the barons of *France*.

Q. How came *Hugh* to be surnamed *Capet*?

A. The reason is not certainly known ; perhaps, it was because he had a great head ; or because he was the first that wore a hat, or cap.

ROBERT.

Q. WHO succeeded *Hugh Capet*?

A. *Hugh*, having reigned with great glory the space of nine years, died in peace, and left the kingdom to his son *Robert*, in the year of *Christ* 996.

Q. What character have historians given of *Robert*?

A. That he was wise, courageous, learned, and took pleasure in writing for the church ; being author of that part of the prose service, read in mass on *Whitsunday*, in honour of the *Holy Ghost*.

Q. What

Q. What were the warlike exploits of *Robert*?

A. He reduced the dutchy of *Burgundy* under his obedience, and gave it to his third son *Robert*, in the year of *Christ* 1001; which the descendants of this prince kept possession of near 400 years, till 1364; when the last duke of the race of *Robert*, dying without children, king *John* gave it to *Philip the Hardy*, his son.

Q. How long did *Robert* live?

A. To the age of sixty, and died in the year 1031; being endowed with all the qualities of a great man.

HENRY I.

Q. WHO succeeded *Robert*?

A. *Henry*, the eldest son then living whom he had associated in the government, and caused to be crowned two years before he died.

Q. Had he any more sons?

A. Two; *Robert* duke of *Burgundy*, and *Eudes* bishop of *Auxerre*.

Q. What is the character of *Henry* I?

A. That his wisdom made his reign, which lasted twenty-nine years, peaceable and glorious.

Q. Was he never engaged in any wars?

A. Only in one that was considerable; which was against the *Normans*, whom, by the force of his arms, he compelled to receive for their sovereign *William* the bastard, afterwards surnamed the *Conqueror*; because he conquered *England*.

Q. Whose son was *William*?

A. The

A. The natural son of *Robert* duke of *Normandy*, who, dying without legitimate children, left him his heir; but the *Normans* refused to acknowledge him for their sovereign.

2. Whither did he fly for protection, after they had put this indignity upon him?

A. To king *Henry*, who went with him into *Normandy*, defeated those people, and put him into the possession of that duchy, in the year 1047; but, according to the *English* historians, in 1035, when he was but nine years of age.

2. Did not the kingdom of *Burgundy* come to a conclusion after this *Norman* war?

A. *Rodolph*, the last king of *Burgundy*, dying without children, appointed for his heir the emperor *Conrad II.* surnamed the *Salic*, who was duke of *Worms*, and had married the sister of *Robert*: but *Conrad* united to the empire what he could get of this kingdom, which was dismembered in such a manner, that nothing remained to his successors, but the county of *Burgundy*.

2. What provinces were formed out of the ruins of this kingdom?

A. *Viennois*, *Provence*, *Burgundy*, and *Savoy*: though *Provence* had been dismembered fifty years before the death of the last king *Rodolph*, by *Rabaut*, first earl of that province.

PHILIP I.

2. WHICH of the three sons of *Henry I.* succeeded him?

A. His eldest son *Philip*, whom he caused to be crowned, and consecrated at *Rheims*, a little before his death.

2. How

Q. How old was *Philip*, when his father died?

A. But seven; so that *Henry*, a little before his death, appointed *Baldwin*, earl of *Flanders*, his tutor, and regent of the kingdom; who acquitted himself of the trust with great honour and fidelity.

Q. How long did *Philip I.* reign?

A. Forty-nine years; during which time many remarkable transactions happened in several parts of *Europe*, wherein the king but little concerned himself; either because he was not of an enterprising genius; or, because he perceived that it was better to live in peace and quietness in his own kingdom, than to leave it in quest of fame and honour.

Q. Did he meet with no disturbances at home?

A. About the middle of his reign, he fell under the censures of the pope, and was himself excommunicated by *Urban II.* in 1096, in a council which he assembled, at *Clermont*, for the disorderly life he led with *Bertrade*, the wife of *Fulk* earl of *Anjou*, whom he had seduced from her husband,

Q. Was he fond of this woman?

A. Passionately so; for he suffered himself to be governed by her in every thing; not excepting the most important affairs of state; and, to please her, he divorced queen *Bertha* his wife: but, soon after, pope *Paschal II.* sent two legates into *France*, who prevailed with *Philip* to send her back into *Anjou*, from whence he never more recalled her.

Q. Was this the only affair of consequence that happened in this king's reign?

A. The only one, in which he himself had any

E

concern;

concern : but many important affairs passed in other places.

Q. What were those ?

A. The conquest of *England*, by *William* duke of *Normandy* ; the long war between the popes and the emperors, for the right of investitures to bishopricks and abbies ; and the holy war of the christians against the *Turks* and *Saracens* in *Asia*, called the CRUSADE.

Q. Who was the cause of this war ?

*The first
Crusade.*

A. Pope *Urban II.* who, having fled into *France* to avoid the pursuit of *Henry IV.* emperor of the west, convoked a council at *Clermont*, to whom he declared that it was his desire to incite the christians, to engage in a war against the infidels, who had almost extinguished christianity in *Asia*, and to endeavour to regain the holy-land from them.

Q. Did the prelates and inferior clergy preach up this proposal ?

A. With such zeal, that, in a short time, an almost innumerable multitude of *French* appeared disposed to undertake that enterprize, in the year 1096.

Q. Did the same zeal spread into the other kingdoms and states of *Europe* ?

A. Infomuch, that there was soon a sufficient number of men to compose several armies ; who called this war the *Crusade* ; and those who engaged in it the *Croises* ; because, by order of the pope, they wore red crosses upon their shoulders.

Q. Where was the place for the general rendezvous of the *Croises* ?

A. At *Constantinople* : but the *French* were almost the only people that arrived there ; the others

others having either deserted ; or, abandoning themselves to plunder, were destroyed by the inhabitants of the countries through which they passed. In consequence whereof, the *French* almost carried on the war alone, with a small number of *English* and *Italians*.

Q. How did *Philip I.* govern the kingdom, towards the latter end of his reign ?

A. The eight last years of his life, were sunk in inactivity and voluptuousness.

LEWIS VI. surnamed the Gross.

Q. WHO succeeded *Philip I.*

A. His son *Lewis* ; to whom he had entrusted all the affairs of the kingdom, for a considerable time before his death.

Q. In what manner did *Lewis* conduct them ?

A. With greater wisdom than could have been expected from his youth, and want of experience.

Q. Was not the royal authority extremely weakened by the indolence of the old king ?

A. He was scarce considered as any thing, in his latter days, more than the chief among several great lords.

Q. How long did *Philip I.* live ?

A. He died, at *Melun*, in the sixtieth year of his age ; and *Lewis VI.* was crowned at *Orleans*, by the archbishop of *Sens*, metropolitan of that city ; which occasioned some controversy.

Q. Of what nature, and between whom, did this dispute arise ?

A. The dispute arose from the archbishop of *Rheims*, who pretended that it was his right to

crown the kings of *France* ; and this pretension is still preserved to that see ; nevertheless, the kings have always possessed a right to be crowned, by whom, and where they please ; though, out of respect to the memory of *St. Reney*, who baptized *Clovis*, most of them have chose the archbishop of *Rheims* for the performance of that ceremony.

Q. How did *Lewis* begin his reign ?

A. By endeavouring to quell the insolence of the barons, who refused to pay him their lawful obedience.

Q. Who assisted and encouraged the barons to maintain this rebellion ?

A. *Henry I.* king of *England*, the youngest son of *William* the conqueror.

Q. Did *Lewis* succeed in this attempt ?

A. Yes ; and then turned his arms against the *English*, who had long been his enemies ; but did not openly declare war against him.

Q. What was the subject of this war ?

A. The earldom of *Maine* ; for *Elias*, earl thereof, dying without male issue, *Fulk* earl of *Anjou*, son of him who had been deprived of his wife by *Philip I.* pretending this earldom belonged to him, because he had married the daughter of *Elias*, took possession of it, and paid homage to the king : but *Henry I.* king of *England*, pretending also that this earldom belonged to him, took up arms against him.

Q. With which of these competitors did *Lewis* join ?

A. He took *Fulk* under his protection, and made war upon the *English* in *Normandy*.

Q. Did any thing remarkable happen in this war ?

A. *Henry* defeated the *French*, took the great standard of *France*, and carried it in triumph to *Roan*.

Q. How

Q. How long did this war continue ?

A. It began in the year 1118, and lasted upwards of 300 years : for though it was interrupted by several treaties of peace, none of them were able to establish a good understanding between the two crowns.

Q. When was the first treaty concluded between them ?

A. The same year the war commenced ; which was done by the mediation of pope *Calixtus II.* who then held a general council at *Rheims* ; wherein he condemned, excommunicated, and deposed the emperor *Henry V.*

Q. Are there any more remarkable incidents in the history of *Lewis VI* ?

A. *Charles the good*, earl of *Flanders*, son of the king of *Denmark*, and cousin-german of *Lewis VI.* by his mother's side, having been barbarously assassinated at his devotions in the church, in 1127. and leaving no children ; several princes pretended a right to the earldom.

Q. In what manner were their differences adjusted ?

A. *Lewis VI.* as sovereign lord, commanded them to repair to *Arras* ; among whom was *William* duke of *Normandy*, nephew of *Henry* king of *England*, whose pretensions were not so just as some of the others ; and yet the king adjudged it to him, purely because he was an enemy to his uncle, the king of *England*.

Q. Did not *Lewis* associate his eldest son *Philip* in the government about this time ?

A. Yes ; the young prince was crowned and consecrated in the usual manner, and his early good qualities made great things expected from him ; but, a few days after, riding through the suburbs of *Paris*, his horse took fright at the

fight of a hog, threw him off, and bruised him in such a manner, that he died the night following.

Q. Was not the king greatly afflicted at this loss?

A. He endeavoured to repair it, by bestowing the same favour upon his second son *Lewis*, who was crowned at *Rheims* by pope *Innocent II.* who was then in *France*, in the year 1131. To distinguish him from his father, he was surnamed *Lewis the young*; and the dutchy of *Aquitain*, being at that time possessed by *Eleanora*, daughter and heiress of *William* duke thereof, and earl of *Poitou*, the king, to re-unite that dutchy and earldom to the crown, concluded a marriage between her and his son, in the year 1137.

Q. How long did *Lewis* live, after this marriage was consummated?

A. But a few months; for he died at *Paris* the same year.

Q. What were the qualities of this prince?

A. He was so wise, brave, and prudent, that his reign was glorious; having reduced under his obedience almost all the lords of the kingdom, who had withdrawn themselves from their dependance upon the king from the end of the reign of *Philip I.*

Q. How many children had *Lewis VI*?

A. He left five sons, and one daughter. His fourth son was *Peter de Courtenay*, from whom the present family of the *Courtenay's* are descended; and his third son was *Philip* archdeacon of *Paris*, remarkable for his modesty.

Q. Is there any thing else remarkable of this king?

A. No; only that, during his reign, a *Norman* prince, named *Roger*, founded the kingdom of *Sicily*;

Sicily; which has since been divided in two, called the kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily*.

LEWIS VII. called the YOUNG.

Q. WHERE was this prince, when his father died?

A. In *Aquitain*; and, as the acquisition of that great province made him very powerful, all the princes, subject to the crown at his accession, continued, contrary to custom, in perfect submission; which caused great peace and tranquility throughout the kingdom: but, soon afterwards, he had a quarrel with pope *Innocent II*.

Q. What was the occasion of their difference?

A. About the election of an archbishop of *Bourges*: for the clergy having elected a person of merit named *Quercinas*, who was approved by the king; the pope annulled this election, as not being lawful, and gave the archbishoprick to *Peter*.

Q. How was this quarrel adjusted?

A. By the mediation of *St. Bernard*, abbot of *Clairvaux*; who prevailed with the king to suffer *Peter* to possess it.

Q. How was the holy war conducted, during this reign?

*The second
Crusade
1147.*

A. The number of Christians who had conquered *Syria*, being so greatly diminished by time, and the continual wars they had to maintain, that they could scarce any longer resist the infidels; pope *Eugenius II*. solicited the christian princes to send them succours.

Q. How was this request of the pope received?

A. By the zeal, with which *St. Bernard* exhorted the *French* and *Germans*, he persuaded

those two nations to undertake the *Crusade* ; and the king departed for this expedition with an army of 80,000 men, accompanied by most of the nobility in the kingdom, in the year 1147 : the emperor having also done the same, with a numerous army.

Q. Did these two great monarchs atchieve any thing worthy of their dignity ?

A. The prophecy of St. *Bernard*, in which he had foretold their happy success in this war, was not fulfilled. The emperor was betrayed by his guides, and his army cut in pieces ; nor was the king more successful ; for having summoned all the princes, and other the most considerable among the christians, to the city of *Acre*, antiently called *Ptolemaid*, to consult with them what was necessary to be done ; it was resolved to besiege the city of *Damas*, capital of *Asia minor*, which they found so impregnable, that they were compelled to raise the siege ; when the king and the emperor, having discovered the perfidy of the *Syrians*, returned into their own dominions.

Q. How did queen *Eleanora* behave, during the absence of her royal consort ?

A. She prostituted herself indifferently to all sorts of persons, without taking the least care to conceal her shame ; so that the king determined to separate from her ; his pretence for this separation being the kindred there was between them : whereupon he caused his marriage to be declared null, by an assembly of prelates, and great men of the kingdom, in the year 1152.

Q. Did *Lewis* marry again ?

A. He married *Ades* the daughter of *Theobald*, earl of *Champagne*, by whom he had a son, which he named *Philip*, and gave him the surname of
God's

God's gift ; but his many good qualities, afterwards gave him the name of *Augustus*.

Q. What became of *Eleanora* ?

A. Immediately after her separation, she married *Henry* earl of *Anjou*, and duke of *Normandy*, who was declared successor to *Stephen* king of *England* ; and who accordingly succeeded him, two years after his marriage, when he found himself on a sudden, the most puissant prince in *Europe* ; being, at the same time, king of *England*, duke of *Normandy* and *Aquitain*, earl of *Anjou*, *Poitou*, *Tourain*, and *Maine*. He also conquered *Ireland* some years afterwards.

Q. Did not *Henry II.* king of *England*, at this time, lay claim to the earldom of *Thoulouse*, part of the dutchy of *Aquitain* ?

A. Yes ; but without effect : whereupon *Henry* declared war against *Lewis*, to obtain possession of it by force ; but the conquest of *Ireland*, in which he was then engaged, prevented him from making any progress in his design ; and peace was concluded between them ; which was confirmed by the marriage of *Henry*, eldest son of the king of *England*, with *Eleanora*, the daughter of *Lewis*. This alliance between the two kings was farther renewed, by the marriage of *Richard* second son of the king of *England* and duke of *Aquitain*, to *Adelles*, the king's second daughter, in the year 1176.

Q. Was not *Lewis* now almost worn out with age ?

A. He fell into a paralytic disorder, and resolved to put his son *Philip* in possession of the kingdom ; who was accordingly crowned by *St. Sabinus*, archbishop of *Rheims*, in 1179.

Q. How long did *Lewis* survive his son's coronation ?

A. Having always had a great veneration for *Thomas Becket*, archbishop of *Canterbury*, who had been barbarously murdered in his own church, by the order of *Henry II.* king of *England*; to satisfy that love which he preserved for his memory, *Lewis* went into *England*, after his death to visit his tomb; and, at his return from this voyage, he died, in the year 1180, aged 60.

Q. Is there any thing further remarkable recorded of *Lewis VII.*

A. Under his reign, the university of *Paris* first became celebrated; consisting of a society of several persons, who applied themselves, some to teach, and others to study, such sciences as have been approved and established by the prince.

PHILIP II. surnamed AUGUSTUS.

Q. BY whom was *Lewis the Young* succeeded?

A. By his son *Philip*, whom he had caused to be crowned before his death: however, *Philip* resolved to be crowned again; and, at the same time, caused his consort, *Elizabeth* of *Hainault*, also to be crowned.

Q. What actions were performed by *Philip*, in the beginning of his reign?

A. He signalized it by the just punishment which he inflicted on the *Jews*, in depriving them of their estates, and banishing them out of the kingdom; but permitting them to carry their moveables away; which was done in the year 1182.

Q. Did he never suffer the *Jews* to return again?

A. A.

A. A few days afterwards, having occasion for money to defray the expences of the wars he was engaged in, he was obliged to sell them this permission.

2. What other memorable actions were performed by *Philip*?

A. *Henry II.* king of *England*, having given the kingdom of *Poitou*, to his son *Richard*; *Philip* insisted upon that prince's rendering him homage for it, as he was obliged: but *Henry* raised so many obstacles to retard the performance, that the king, taking them for a refusal, entered the territories of the *English* with an army, took the cities of *Mans*, *Tours*, and several others, defeating the *English* wherever they opposed him; which so greatly chagrined *Henry*, that he fell sick, and died at *Chinon*.

2. Did the war continue after the death of *Henry*?

A. *Richard*, his son and successor, sued for peace, which was readily granted; and after *Philip* had received the homage which was before refused, he generously restored to him all that had been taken from him.

2. How did *Richard* and *Philip* agree, after the conclusion of this peace?

A. The two kings went together to assist the christians of the holy land, against the infidels; and *Philip*, before his departure, made his will in form of letters.

2. Is there any thing proper to remark on this occasion?

A. Only; that, by these letters, *Philip* appointed *William* archbishop of *Rheims*, his uncle, to govern the kingdom, in conjunction with the queen his mother, during his absence.

2. In

The third
Crusade
1190.

Q. In what manner did *Philip* and *Richard* proceed ?

A. They departed to make war upon *Saladin*, king of *Syria* and *Egypt*, who had made himself master of the city of *Jerusalem*, and almost all those cities which the christians had before possessed in *Syria*.

Q. How were the expences of this war defrayed ?

A. A general assembly of the states granted the king leave to raise the tenths upon the possessions of all his subjects ; which tax was called the *Saladin*.

Q. What rout did the *French* and *English* forces take ?

A. They marched first into *Sicily*, where *Richard* would go no farther, declaring that he could not leave *Sicily* for six months ; but he left all the *French* forces under his command with *Philip*, to proceed on the intended expedition.

Q. Which way did *Philip*, when he became sole commander of the combined army, direct his course.

A. After a navigation of a few days, he arrived before the city of *Acre*, the ancient *Ptolemaid*, upon the confines of *Phœnicia* and *Palestine*, in 1191 ; whither he was followed by *Richard* some months afterwards.

Q. What was done by the two princes, after this second junction ?

A. They laid siege to the city of *Acre* ; but, during the whole time of it, *Philip* and *Richard* had continual dissensions ; and, considering the mutual hatred they bore to each other, it is no wonder they continually disagreed.

Q. What was the result of their disagreement ?

A. The

A. The *English*, through jealousy of the *French*, behaved ill in the siege, and did not arrive till towards the end of it ; nevertheless, they would not allow the *French* the glory of having reduced it.

Q. By what action were the besieged obliged to surrender ?

A. By the taking of the tower, which the *French* carried by assault ; upon which occasion, *Alberic*, the king's marshal, was slain ; which is the first time mention is made in history of a marshal of *France*, as being a considerable officer.

Q. What was done by these combined powers, after the reduction of the city of *Acre* ?

A. *Philip* embarked, and returned into *France* ; while *Richard* remained in *Syria*, and continued to carry on the war against the infidels.

Q. What was the behaviour of *Philip*, on his arrival in *France* ?

A. He entered the territories of the *English* with an army ; and, taking advantage of the absence of *Richard*, took several towns in *Normandy* ; which obliged the king of *England* to think of returning.

Q. Did not this perfidious action cause greater animosities between the two kings ?

A. Upon the return of *Richard*, the fury of the war was redoubled ; but it did not put a stop to the good success of *Philip* ; who, upon all occasions defeated his adversary, though he was assisted by the *Cotterels*, who fought for him against their lawful sovereign.

Q. Who were these *Cotterels* ?

A. They were a multitude of wretches ; who, having assembled at *Bourges*, had elected themselves officers ; and, being formed into a considerable

derable body of troops, plundered and ravaged the country.

Q. Did not *Philip* endeavour to suppress them?

A. He sent forces against them, who killed a considerable number; whereupon the rest fled to the *English*, to whom they were very serviceable.

Q. How long did this war continue?

A. Almost six years; though it was interrupted by several treaties, which were not so well observed on either side as might be expected.

Q. What were the transactions of *Philip*, after the death of *Richard*?

A. *Philip* soon after married a second wife named *Gilberge*, sister of *Canute* king of *Denmark*; who, but for what reason is uncertain, became so insupportable to him, that, after three months, he caused this marriage to be annulled by an assembly of bishops.

Q. Did not her brother *Canute* complain of this injury, to pope *Celestin* III?

A. To very little purpose: for the pope had not courage to act with that vigour which was necessary on this occasion; and the year following, 1196, *Philip* married another wife, called *Agnes*, daughter of the duke of *Moravia*, which occasioned the king of *Denmark* to renew his complaint: whereupon, the pope sent the cardinal *St. Mary*, as his legate into *France*; who, in 1199, assembled a council of all the prelates of the kingdom, at *Dijon*; and, with their consent, laid the kingdom under interdiction, if, within twenty days, the king did not re-take his lawful wife.

Q. What was the meaning of laying the country under interdiction?

A. It was to forbid the celebration of divine service in it; for to interdict a priest, or any ecclesiastic,

ecclesiastic, was to forbid him to perform the functions of his ministry.

Q. Was not the king highly provoked at this proceeding?

A. He used all the prelates, who assisted in that council, with great cruelty; deprived several of them of their benefices; and caused the queen to be imprisoned; but another council being called, in which the king assisted, and finding the issue would not be favourable to him, he acquainted them, that they need not give themselves any further trouble in the decision of an affair, which he had himself determined, by retaking the queen his wife, in 1201.

Q. What became of *Mary*, whom the king had married after his separation from *Gilberge*?

A. She died with grief; because her marriage with the king was not legitimate: but the pope legitimated a son and daughter, that *Philip* had by her; which action occasioned great displeasure.

Q. What else was done by *Philip*, after the death of *Richard* king of *England*?

A. *Richard*, who was killed at *Limousin*, having left no children, was succeeded by his brother *John*, in prejudice to the right of his nephew *Arthur*, duke of *Bretagne*, who had been appointed heir to the crown of *England* by his deceased uncle. *Arthur* disputed the title with him, and a furious war ensued; of which *Philip* taking advantage at this juncture, entered *Normandy*, where he made a great progress, took *Arthur* under his protection, and seized upon the earldom of *Anjou*.

Q. Was *John* able to resist these two enemies?

A. He sued for peace, and obtained it.

Q. What

Q. What were the conditions on which this treaty was founded ?

A. That *John* should do homage to *Philip*, for all his possessions in *France*; and that the former should keep all that he had taken from him.

Q. Did this peace last for any considerable time ?

A. Whether *Philip* sought a pretence to declare war, or whether he might have any other reason to act as he did, he ordered the king of *England* to come to *Paris*, and do him homage; which *John* having refused, he declared war against him, and furnished *Arthur* with troops and money, to enable him to make war on his side also.

Q. What success had *Arthur* ?

A. He entered *Poitou*, without knowing the country; and, falling into an ambuscade, was taken by his uncle, who put him to death.

Q. What was the consequence of this murder ?

A. *Constance*, countess of *Bretagne*, mother of *Arthur*, demanded justice of *Philip* for the death of her son; and *Philip* summoned the king of *England* to appear before the house of peers of *France*, there to be tried for the crime of which he was accused.

Q. Is there any Thing farther related by historians, concerning this affair ?

A. Some say, on *John's* not appearing, he was condemned to die, as guilty of the death of his nephew; that he was declared a rebel, for not appearing before the peers of *France*; and, as such, deprived of all his possessions in that kingdom.

Q. Was this decree ever executed ?

A. It was in part; for *Philip* took up arms, and

and reduced all *Normandy* under his obedience, re-uniting this province to the kingdom, in the year 1204; two hundred and seventy years after it had been given to *Rhollo*, duke of the *Normans*. After this, the war continued in *Poitou* and *Aquitain*; where *Philip* took several towns, and among others the city of *Poitiers*.

Q. Is there any thing to remark on this occasion?

A. The condemnation of *John* king of *England*, is the first place in history where the peers of *France* are mentioned.

Q. Of what number and quality, did these peers of *France* consist?

A. They were in number twelve; six ecclesiastical, and six secular. The ecclesiastics were, and are still, the archbishop and duke of *Rheims*; the bishop and duke of *Langres*; the bishop and duke of *Laon*; the bishop and earls of *Noyon*, *Beavois*, and *Chalons*; to whom *Lewis XIV.* has since added the archbishop of *Paris*, and also created him a duke and peer.

Q. Who were the secular peers?

A. The dukes of *Normandy*, *Aquitain*, and *Burgundy*; with the earls of *Flanders*, *Champagne*, and *Thoulouse*.

Q. When were the peers of *France* established?

A. No mention is made of them in history, before the reign of *Philip Augustus*: but *Matthew Paris*, an *English* historian, who lived in the time of *Philip*, and wrote in the reign of *St. Lewis* his grandson, has these words; "The peers of *France*, are the first officers of the crown, appointed for the management of the most important affairs of the kingdom."

Q. While *Philip Augustus* was taken up in the conquest of *Normandy*, what was done by the French

French troops who had taken up arms to assist the christians against the infidels ?

A. They took *Constantinople*, and subjected the whole *Grecian* empire.

Q. After this great conquest, who was elected emperor ?

A. *Baldwin* earl of *Flanders*, the general of their forces ; and, laying aside their expedition to the holy land, they wholly employed themselves in keeping possession of the empire they had conquered, in the year 1204.

Q. How long did they keep possession of the *Grecian* empire ?

A. Only fifty five years ; for the *Greeks*, having entered into a general conspiracy, revolted, drove them out of the empire, and elected *Michael Paleologus* emperor.

Q. Did the *French* make any reformation in the *Greek* church, while they were in possession of the empire of *Constantinople* ?

A. During that time, the *Greeks* acknowledged the authority of the pope, and were subject to it ; but when they lost this empire, the pope also lost his authority in it ; and things returned to their former state, in 1259.

Q. Was there not a set of heretics sprung up, about this time, who called themselves *Albigenses* ?

A. Yes ; and the pope's excommunications not proving sufficient to convert them, he sent missionaries to preach up the crusade, particularly against *Raymond* earl of *Thoulouse* their protector ; promising remission of sins to whoever should take up arms against them.

Q. Did this preaching, and promise, make any impression upon the auditors ?

A. Philip

A. Philip Augustus, being at war with the *English*, could not engage in this enterprize; but many of the most considerable noblemen crossed themselves, amongst others, the duke of *Burgundy*, the earls of *Nevers*, and *St. Paul*; the archbishop of *Roan* and *Sens*, and almost all the prelates of *Languedoc*; who elected *Simon*, earl of *Montford*, bastard of king *Robert*, general and commander in chief of the *Croises*.

2. When did this war begin?

A. In 1178; during which, the desolation it caused in *Languedoc* is unconceivable; for the earl of *Thoulouse*, being a powerful nobleman, was at that time in possession of those little territories, which now compose the province of *Languedoc*; so that this war produced no other effects than those of having desolated several provinces, and caused the deaths of many thousand men.

2. Was not the empire of the west vacant, about this time?

A. Yes; and *Philip* the brother of *Henry IV.* caused himself to be elected; though the empire had remained in the house of *Henry* ever since the time of his great uncle *Conrade*.

2. Was not the election of *Philip* made void?

A. Soon after; for *Otho IV.* having been crowned at *Aix la Chapelle*, went to *Rome*, to receive the crown from the hands of the pope.

2. Which part did *Philip Augustus*, king of *France* take, in this dispute?

A. He desired the pope to refuse to crown *Otho*, because he had leagued against him with the king of *England*; but the pope paid no regard to *Philip's* desire, which he afterwards repented; for, immediately after he had crowned *Otho*, that prince demanded all the territories which.

which had been usurped from the empire by him, or his predecessors; and regained them.

Q. Did not the pope pretend to domineer over all *Christendom* with an absolute authority?

A. He first excommunicated *Otho*; and afterwards *John*, king of *England*; gave his kingdom to *Philip Augustus*, and promised remission of sins to whoever should bear arms against him, in the year 1212.

Q. How did the two sovereign powers receive their respective censure from the court of *Rome*?

A. The emperor, instead of being dismayed, pursued his conquests; but the king of *England* made his submission.

Q. What was the issue of *John* king of *England*'s making this submission?

A. The pope changed his sentiments, and declared, by his legate, to *Philip Augustus*, that he could not suffer him to undertake any thing against *England*; because that kingdom was tributary to the holy see. This change caused the king also to alter his designs; and being at *Gravelines*, when he waited for some vessels to pass over into *England*, the neighbourhood of *Flanders* invited him to turn his arms on that side, against *Ferdinand*, earl of *Flanders*, who had refused to send him the succours he was obliged to furnish for the expedition into *England*: for *Philip*, perceiving by this refusal, he had entered into a league with the king of *England*, and the emperor *Otho*, against *France*; immediately entered *Flanders*, and in a short time made himself master of the whole earldom; driving *Ferdinand* out, in the year 1213.

Q. What were the designs of the emperor *Otho*, and of *John* king of *England*, by entering into this league?

A. They

A. They were to attack *France*, on two different sides, at the same time; for which purpose, the emperor was to enter it through *Flanders*, and the king of *England* through *Aquitain*, each with a powerful army; but, at last, the *French* prevailed over them, and gained so compleat a victory, that the whole *German* army was intirely routed, and many persons of distinction taken prisoners; particularly the earls of *Flanders* and *Boulogne*, and the earl of *Salisbury* the king of *England*'s bastard brother: which victory was obtained, in the year 1214, near *Bouines-Bridge*, between *Tournay* and *Lisle*.

Q. How did the king of *England* succeed, after the defeat of the emperor *Otho*?

A. *Lewis*, *Philip*'s eldest son, a few days afterwards, vanquished the *English* forces in *Poitou*; and reduced them to such an extremity, that the king was obliged to beg a truce, which was granted him for five years; and, in memory of these two victories, particularly that of *Bouines*, *Philip Augustus* founded the abbey of *our Lady of victory* near *Senlis*; and placed canons in it, which he took from that of *St. Victor* in *Paris*.

Q. Did the misfortunes of king *John* terminate here?

A. No; for, soon after, the barons of *England* required him to restore the laws of king *Edward*, and the rights and privileges contained in the charter of *Henry I.* which he promised them: but, some months afterwards, finding his affairs in a better situation, he refused to perform what he had promised.

Q. Were not the barons further exasperated on this account?

A. They instantly elected lord *Fitzwalter* for their general, and marched to *London*; which so intimi-

intimidated the king, that he granted them all they required, and signed two charters, the first being called the charter of liberties, or *Magna Charta*, and the second the charter of forests; which have since been the foundation of the *English* liberties.

Q. Did not *John* endeavour to revenge himself on the barons?

A. He raised an army of foreigners, by whose aid he achieved several conquests: but the barons having invited *Lewis*, son of *Philip* into *England*, he defeated *John* in several encounters, and made himself almost entire master of the kingdom.

Q. Did *Lewis* continue long in *England*?

A. No; king *John* dying, the barons abandoned *Lewis*, and submitted themselves to their lawful king *Henry III.* then only ten years old.

Q. How long did *Philip Augustus* live?

A. After having gloriously reigned forty-three years, and enjoying a profound peace for eight years, he died at *Mantes*, on the 15th of July 1223.

Q. What is the character of this prince?

A. *Philip Augustus* merits to be placed among the greatest princes that ever reigned. By his wisdom and valour, he reunited several provinces to the crown, which had been dismembered from it; as *Normandy*, *Vermondois*, *Poitou*, *Anjou*, *Touraine*, *Maine*, *Avergne*, and several other considerable earldoms. He was very careful, through the whole of his reign, to amass riches; being persuaded that it was only for want of money, that the king's his predecessors had not been able to oppose the usurpations of several particular lords. It is remarked, by historians, that he expended very little upon himself, his attendants, or diversions; but that he spared

nothing for the good of his soldiers, or for the repairing the fortifications of the frontier towns, which his predecessors had suffered to fall into ruin. Besides, he was very charitable towards all such of the poor and unfortunate as came to his knowledge.

LEWIS VIII. called the LION.

2. **W**H O succeeded *Philip Augustus*?

A. His son *Lewis*, who was thirty-six years of age when his father died, and caused himself to be crowned at *Rheims*, with his wife *Blanche* of *Castile*; having, before he came to the crown, shewn himself possessed of all the qualities of a great prince. He had long made war with the *English* in *Poitou* and *Aquitain*, and with such success, that, when his father died, nothing remained in their possession in *France*, besides the cities of *Nayort*, *St. John d'Angely*, and *Rochelle*.

2. Did not *Lewis* also endeavour to reduce these cities?

A. He soon after laid siege to them, and took them one after another; but the division which happened at *Rochelle* between the *English* soldiers, and the soldiers that were natives of the country, occasioned the loss of that city. Thus *Lewis VIII.* had the glory of driving the *English* out of *France*, who, till his time, were more powerful there than the king himself; and, in consequence of it, all the nobility of *Aquitain*, except the *Gascons*, paid him homage for their possessions, and acknowledged him their sovereign.

2. How

Q. How did *Lewis* employ his forces, after he had drove the *English* out of *France*?

A. At the sollicitation of pope *Honorius* III. he marched, with near 60,000 men, against the *Albigenses*, that is, against the earl of *Thoulouse*, and all the lords of *Languedoc*, that were *Albigenses*; where he began the war with the siege of *Avignon*, which city belonged to the earl of *Thoulouse*.

Q. Did he take this city?

A. Yes; but it cost him dear; for he not only lost more than half his men, and the bravest of his officers, but he himself also died before it, by a contagious disease that broke out in the army, in *September* 1226.

Q. What issue had *Lewis* VIII?

A. He left five sons and one daughter, of whom *Lewis* the eldest was his successor in the kingdom: however, by his will, he gave his second son *Robert* the earldom of *Artois*; to *Charles* the third, who was afterwards earl of *Provence*, and king of *Sicily*, he gave the earldoms of *Anjou* and *Maine*; and to *Alphonso*, the fourth, the earldoms of *Poitou*, and *Avergne*; as to the fifth, named *John*, he ordered both him, and whatever sons he might have, to embrace a religious life: *Lewis* had likewise another son named *Philip*, who died long before his father.

St. LEWIS, the ninth of that name.

Q. WHAT happened in the state, upon the death of *Lewis* VIII?

A. *Blanche* of *Castile*, his widow, and mother of *St. Lewis*, being a princess of great wit and courage,

courage, worthy to reign, and capable of well-governing a state, after the death of the king her husband, took upon her the title of tutoreſs to the king her ſon, and alſo of the government of the kingdom; in conſequence of which, ſhe commanded the biſhops and barons of *France* to repair to *Rheims*, to aſſiſt at the coronation of *St. Lewis*, who was yet but twelve years of age.

Q. Did not the nobility lay hold of this opportunity, to obtain the lands which their anceſtors had been deprived of, by *Philip Auguſtus*, and *Lewis VIII*?

A. Yes.

Q. Who were the principal lords that entered into this conſpiracy?

A. The duke of *Burgundy*; the earls of *Champagne*, *Bretagne*, *Bar*, and *St. Paul's*; who, after having made their demands, took up arms to compel the queen to grant them what they deſired; and alſo reſuſed to aſſiſt at the coronation.

Q. Did the queen pay any regard to the reſuſal made by theſe great lords?

A. No: ſhe conducted *St. Lewis* to *Rheims*; and cauſed him to be crowned, a month after the death of the king his father, by the biſhop of *Soiſſons*; the ſee of *Rheims* being then vacant.

Q. How did the queen diſunite this powerful confederacy?

A. What ſhe was not able to do by force of arms, ſhe accompliſhed by her wit and addreſs; and though the continual revolts of theſe confederate princes, employed the whole of the king's minority; the wiſe conduct of his mother, at laſt, rendered him ſo ſucceſſful, as to reduce all the rebels to their lawful obedience.

Q. What happened after this favourable event?

F

A. The

A. The king, arriving at the age of twenty, sent to demand *Margaret*, the eldest daughter of the earl of *Provence*, in marriage ; and having obtained her, she was, by his ambassadors, conducted to *Sens*, where they were married, and crowned, by the archbishop of that city, in 1234.

Q. But did not *Hugh* earl of *Marche*, who married *Elizabeth*, the widow of *John*, king of *England*, cause farther troubles, after the young king's marriage ?

A. He refused to do homage to the earl of *Poitiers*, to whom his earldom belonged, though required by the king ; and, having made strong engagements with the *English*, prepared himself for war ; but, notwithstanding the king of *England* came to his assistance, *Lewis* took the most considerable cities in *Marche* ; and, in a pitched battle, defeated the earl and his confederates, near the town of *Taillebourg*.

Q. What were the consequences of this victory ?

A. The city of *Xaintes* opened its gates to *Lewis* ; and the earl of *Marche*, being reduced to the last necessity, had no other recourse than to throw himself at the king's feet, with his wife, who had persuaded him to the revolt.

Q. Did *St. Lewis* pardon him ?

A. Yes : and restored him his earldom, except some places, which he thought proper to keep, in 1242.

Q. Was not *St. Lewis* very remarkable for his piety ?

A. Inasmuch, as it induced him to ask *Baldwin II.* emperor of *Constantinople*, for our saviour's crown of thorns, which was in his chapel there ; and *Baldwin* having granted the king this relic, it was carried in procession to *Notre Dame*, and from

from thence to the the chapel he had built in his palace, called the *Holy Chapel*, in 1239. Some historians say, *St. Lewis*, and the princes his brothers, assisted barefoot at this procession.

Q. Did not pope *Honorius III.* die about this time?

A. Yes: and was succeeded by *Gregory IX.* who caused the crusade against the *Saracens* to be preached up throughout *Europe*; which was embraced by infinite numbers, and even the emperor himself took the cross.

Q. What was meant by taking the cross?

A. Whoever took it on these occasions, was reputed to have made a vow to go to the war against the infidels: but the emperor *Frederic*, soon after departing from his resolution, without the pope's absolution, was by him excommunicated.

Q. Was not the first general council of *Lyons* called on this occasion?

A. The bishops from all parts of *Europe*, being assembled there, to the number of 140, and the ambassadors or deputies of the provinces being there also, pope *Innocent IV.* opened the council, in the monastery of *St. Just*, with a vehement speech against the emperor *Frederic*, in the year 1243.

Q. What was the event of the pope's accusation?

A. A few days after, the council instituted a very wise ordinance, even against the pope himself; evidently shewing, that the excommunication of the emperor was pronounced without reason, and was null: nevertheless, the pope's resentment still continued.

Q. Was not this affair the cause of an interview between *Innocent IV.* and *Sr. Lewis*?

A. The pope, the king, and the queen his mother, had a conference together; in which the first discourse was upon the holy war; but afterwards the king strongly pressed a reconciliation between the pope and the emperor; declaring this was the only reason of his desiring a conference with him: but, not being able to prevail, the king left him very much dissatisfied.

Q. Was not one of the king's brothers married, when this happened?

A. In the year 1246, *Charles* earl of *Anjou*, third brother of *St. Lewis*, contracted a marriage with *Beatrix*, the daughter of *Raymond* earl of *Provence*; by which he afterwards became earl of *Provence*.

Q. Did not *Lewis* take up arms against the infidels, to discharge himself of the vow he had formerly made?

A. Having established queen *Blanche*, his mother, regent of the kingdom; and having gained the *English* by a truce which he made with them; he embarked at *Marseilles*, on the 23d of *September*, 1248; accompanied by the queen his wife, the earls of *Artois* and *Anjou*, his brothers, and the cardinal legate of the pope; who landed at the island of *Cyprus*; where they continued during the winter. The spring following, the king steered his course for *Egypt*; and, approaching near the island of *Damietus*, the strongest city in that kingdom, of the same name, surrendered to him, without so much as being attacked.

Q. Whither did he carry his arms, after this success?

A. It was resolved to besiege grand *Cairo*, the capital of *Egypt*: but in this march, which was long, they were frequently attacked by the *Saracens*; and the earl of *Artois*, the king's brother, pursuing

purſuing a ſquadron of *Saracens* with too great eagernels, whom he had broken, entered *Maſſora* with them, and was there ſlain.

Q. Did not this, and other miſfortunes, oblige *St. Lewis* to make propoſitions of peace?

A. Yes: but the *Saracens*, as a ſecurity for the execution of this treaty, inſiſted upon the perſon of the king as a hoſtage; which propoſition being rejected by him, the treaty broke off; whereupon he reſolved to return to *Damietus*: but the enemy attacked him on the road, defeated him, and took him priſoner, with the princes his brothers, and almoſt all the nobility of *France*, by whom he was attended.

Q. In what manner did the *Saracens* behave to the king?

A. Sometimes with great civility, and at others with menaces; but, at this time, it happened, that the greateſt lords of the *Saracen* empire roſe againſt their ſovereign, and aſſaſinated him in the preſence of *St. Lewis*.

Q. How did they behave to the king, after they had killed the ſultan?

A. They firſt deliberated whether they ſhould elect their priſoner in his place; and one thing only prevented them from doing ſo, according to the ſieur de *Jainville*, who was priſoner with him.

Q. What was that?

A. He appeared too ſtrongly attached to the chriſtian religion, and too great an enemy of the mahometan: but the ſame hiſtorian avers, that the king confeſſed to him, if they had choſe him for their ſultan, he would have accepted the dignity.

Q. How did they deal with him, at laſt?

A. After having deliberated, a whole day, whether they should kill him or not, they agreed to save his life, and to set all the barons at liberty; on his restoring *Damietus*, and paying them 100,000 franks.

Q. Who were the chief prisoners?

A. The king's two brothers, the earl of *Flanders*, the earl of *Bretagne*, and the sieur de *Joinville*, chief justice of *Champagne*. They kept the earl of *Poitiers*, as a hostage, and security for the sum of 100,000 franks; but *Lewis* got him out of their hands the next day, by sending that sum to the *Saracens*.

Q. Did the king, after he was released, return immediately to *France*?

A. No: he first went to the city of *Acres*, where the queen waited for him; who, during his captivity, had been delivered of a son, whom she named *John Tristan*, because he was born in a time of affliction.

Q. Had St. *Lewis* no intention to recommence the war against the infidels; thereby, to efface the dishonour of his defeat and imprisonment?

A. The death of queen *Blanche*, his mother; and the advice sent him, that the king of *England* intended to undertake something in *Flanders*, obliged him to embark, in order to return into his own kingdom: accordingly, he finished the voyage in the same vessel he went out with, and arrived in *France*, about five years after he had left it, in 1253.

Q. What actions did he perform, on his return into his own kingdom?

A. He first applied himself to reform the disorders caused in it by his absence, and particularly in the administration of justice. He also took great pains to repress the injustice of the *grands*,
dees,

dees, and the violences they exercised over their dependents.

Q. To what other matters did his reformation extend?

A. Being remarkable for his piety, he, in the next place, published a severe ordinance against blasphemers, and all who swore by the name of God: these he commanded to be marked on the lips, some say on the forehead; and caused this sentence to be executed upon several persons, considerable for their birth and fortunes: nay, modern historians affirm, that St. *Lewis* ordered them to be bored through the tongue; but this is not to be found in cotemporary writers.

Q. Is there any thing further remarkable in the history of St. *Lewis*?

A. After he had regulated his domestic affairs, he sent for *Henry III.* king of *England*, and concluded a peace with him, contrary to the advice and remonstrances of his council, of which the following were the principal articles; “ That
“ *Lewis* should restore to the king of *England*,
“ the dutchy of *Acquitain*, with its dependencies;
“ which he should hold by fealty and homage to
“ the crown of *France*, and that he should be one
“ of the peers of the kingdom; besides which,
“ *Lewis* should also pay him the sum of 300,000
“ franks: and, in exchange, the king of *England*,
“ with the consent of the princes and barons of
“ his realm, should give up whatever right or
“ pretension he had, or might have, upon *Norman-*
“ *dy*, *Anjou*, *Maine*, *Poitou*, and *Touraine*.”

Q. Was this treaty ever executed?

A. Yes: and, according to the *French* historians, the king of *England* paid homage to St. *Lewis*, in the presence of the barons of *France* and *England*, in 1259.

Q. Did not the barons of *England*, soon after this, revolt against their king?

A. Three years after they gave him trouble; but submitted their difference to St. *Lewis*; who caused the deputies of king *Henry*, and those of the barons, to repair to *Amiens*; where he heard the complaints of both, and gave judgment in favour of the king.

Q. Did the barons acquiesce in this judgment?

A. Yes: but, a short time after, *Henry* giving them fresh occasion for complaints, they took arms against him, defeated him, and took him prisoner, with his son and brother; which last had been elected emperor.

Q. Was not the hatred of *Innocent IV.* against the emperor *Frederic*, now at an end?

A. No; not even at his death: such was the christian charity of this vicerent of heaven! the son of *Frederic*, seeing himself still exposed to the persecution of the pope, who had caused the crusade to be preached up against him, resisted all his efforts with equal courage and success; but, at last, the death of *Conrad*, who it is thought was poisoned by *Manfred*, his bastard brother, put an end to the pope's persecutions: *Conrad* leaving a son called *Conradin*, who was in *Bavaria* when his father died, *Manfred* took the title of guardian to his nephew, and the government of the kingdom of *Sicily*.

Q. What was the consequence of *Manfred's* usurpation?

A. The popes *Innocent IV.* and *Alexander IV.* both dying, *Urban IV.* succeeded to the apostolic chair, and, being a native of *Troyes* in *Champagne*, acted with such vigour against *Manfred*, that, not contented with excommunicating him, he gave his

his kingdom of *Sicily* to *Charles*, earl of *Anjou* and *Provence*, brother of *St. Lewis*, on condition that he should pay for it annually 40,000 crowns of gold, as a tribute to the holy see. This occasioned the *Sicilians* to send for *Conradin* out of *Germany*, and to crown him with great festivity. This young prince marched afterwards into *Apulia*, and valiantly opposed the enterprizes of *Charles*: but fortune did not favour his designs; for he was defeated and taken in flight; when the king caused him, and the duke of *Austria*, to be beheaded at *Naples*, by the pope's advice.

Q. Did not the defeat and death of *Conradin* put *Charles* of *Anjou*, in possession of *Apulia* and *Calabria*?

A. Yes: but the *Sicilians* held out some time longer; though at last they were obliged to submit to the conquerors, not having any one capable to command them: however, the murder of *Conradin* was afterwards revenged, by the blood of the *French* at the *Sicilian vespers*.

Q. But to return to *St. Lewis*: was he not passionately desirous of repairing his former bad success against the infidels, by a second expedition?

A. He assembled the bishops and barons, to whom he declared his intentions were to go into *Africa*, and attack *Tunis*, a very large and rich city, and not difficult to be taken: accordingly, he prepared for the expedition, and ordered his fleet to anchor near a fort built upon the ruins of old *Carthage*; from whence he marched towards *Tunis*, with a design to besiege it?

Q. What was his success, in this expedition?

A. Before the siege was formed, a sickness broke out in the camp, of which one of the king's sons, *John* earl of *Nevers*, surnamed *Tristan* died:

the pope's legate also, and the king himself, were attacked with the distemper, which was a species of the plague.

Q. How did his majesty employ himself in his last hours?

A. After having received the sacrament and extreme unction, he caused himself to be laid upon ashes; and, through a penitent humility, expired upon them, on the 25th of *August*, 1270.

Q. How many children had St. *Lewis*?

A. Five sons, who all died before him, except his successor *Philip the hardy*, ; of the other four, only one left children, which was *Robert* earl of *Clermont*, who married *Beatrice* of *Bourbon*; from whom the present king of *France* is descended.

Q. What were the qualities of St. *Lewis*?

A. He was one of the greatest princes that ever reigned: shewing great wisdom and justice in the government of his kingdom; together with much courage and greatness of soul in all his actions.

Q. Was he not blamed for certain devout practices; as rather suiting the character of an ecclesiastic, than a great king?

A. It is true, that his saying his breviary, washing the feet of the poor and religious, wearing hair-cloth, suffering discipline to be performed upon him by his confessor; confessing two or three times a week, and the like; were condescensions in no wise suitable to his wisdom and dignity: but it may be said, in his justification, that none of these either took him from the great affairs of his kingdom, or made him less regardful of his government; and those who affected to despise him for it, at the beginning of his reign, found afterwards that his power was as much to be feared, as his virtue admired.

Q. Was

Q. Was he not also blamed for his expeditions into *Asia* and *Africa*; as serving only to destroy great numbers of his subjects?

A. Those who advised him to the expedition into *Africa*, were guilty of a thing highly injurious to the state: but the war against the infidels was, in that age, a kind of general infatuation.

Q. Is there any thing further remarkable of this king?

A. When he was at *Vincennes*, he frequently sat at the foot of an oak, where he heard all that would come and speak to him, none being prevented in approaching him, and judged their causes himself: this custom he had from his predecessors, who used, on certain days, to appear at the palace gate, that the lowest of their subjects might demand justice; which was called the pleadings of the port, *placita portæ*, *sententiæ*, or *arbitriæ*. At last, the virtues of this great prince, and the miracles ascribed to him after his death, determined pope *Boniface* to place him in the number of the saints, twenty-seven years after his death, in 1297.

Q. What were his benefactions?

A. Under his reign lived a doctor of the university of *Paris*, named *Robert Sorbon*, who, though of very mean birth, was recommended to *St. Lewis*, and frequently eat with him; whereupon the king enabled him to found the college of the *Sorbonne*, which is the first, and most celebrated of the university of *Paris*, in 1253.

PHILIP III. furnamed the HARDY.

Q. WHO succeeded St. Lewis ?

A. After his death, his eldest son *Philip*, who was with him in the camp near *Tunis*, was acknowledged his successor.

Q. On what account was he furnamed the *Hardy* ?

A. Because, he was not affrighted at finding himself exposed to the arms of the barbarians, after the death of his father ; for, in other respects, the name suited him but little.

Q. How old was *Philip*, when he came to the crown ?

A. He was but twenty ; though his second son *Philip* was already three years old.

Q. How did this young prince manage the war against the *Saracens*, after the death of his father ?

A. The king of *Sicily* coming to his assistance with a fleet, and getting to the camp, a few minutes after St. *Lewis* died, it was resolved to give them battle ; in which the king of *Tunis* was defeated : when the *Saracens* made proposals for a peace ; which proposals were accepted, and a truce concluded for ten years.

Q. What were the conditions of this peace ?

A. That *Philip* should retire with his troops ; that the king of *Tunis* should reimburse him the expences of the war ; that all merchant ships belonging to christians should, for the future, be permitted to enter and go out of the port of *Tunis*, without paying any thing ; that those christians whose abode was at *Tunis*, should have liberty to exercise their religion there ; and that this city should

should pay the king of *Sicily* the tribute which it had anciently paid his predecessors.

Q. Did *Philip* embark on his return to *France*, after the conclusion of this treaty?

A. Yes; but *Theobald*, earl of *Champagne*, and king of *Navarre*, with *Alphonso* earl of *Poitou*, the king's uncle, died in the voyage; the latter of whom leaving no issue, and being also earl of *Thoulouse*, this earldom was reunited to the crown of *France*.

Q. When was the second council of *Lyons* convoked?

A. By pope *Gregory X.* in 1273; being composed of five hundred bishops, and one thousand abbots; where *Philip* paid the pope a visit?

Q. Was *Philip* engaged in any other war, besides that against the *Saracens*?

A. He commenced a war against *Ferdinand*, eldest son of *Alphonso* king of *Castile*, on account of a marriage contract made between his sister *Blanche* and this prince; but the whole of this expedition ended in nothing more than marching into the frontiers of *Spain*, and returning into *France*, without having attempted any thing, in the year 1274. But, the same year, he reduced the *Navarrians*, who remained in peaceable subjection to him.

Q. Who did *Philip III.* marry, after the death of his first wife *Elizabeth* of *Aragon*?

A. *Mary*, daughter of the earl of *Brabant*, who was a princess of great merit and beauty, and of whom the king was so passionately fond, that he caused her to be crowned at *Paris*, by the archbishop of *Rheims*.

Q. Did not the *Sicilians* revolt, about this time?

A. *Yes*.

A. Peter, king of Arragon, having pretensions to the kingdom of Sicily, through his wife, the daughter of Manfred, the Sicilians offered to take up arms in his favour; and when all things were ready, they began the revolt with massacring all the French in that kingdom, who were all killed, upon Easter Sunday, at the hour when they rung to vespers; the murderers carrying their cruelty so far, as even to rip up the wombs of such women as they judged to be with child, in order to destroy their children.

Q. Who is supposed to be the author of this conspiracy?

A. A Sicilian nobleman, whom Charles their king had deprived of his estate.

Q. Did not Philip consult measures to revenge the perfidy of the Sicilians?

A. By advice of the barons, he raised a great army, and entered into the territories of Peter king of Arragon: but this expedition ended in taking two cities only; for, winter approaching, Philip, on his return to France, fell sick at Perpignan, where he died, in the year 1284.

Q. How many children did Philip leave behind him?

A. By his first wife, Isabella of Arragon, he had Philip earl of Navarre, and Charles earl of Valois: by his second wife, Mary of Brabant, he had Lewis earl D'vereux, whose son became king of Navarre; Blanche dutchess of Austria; and Margaret queen of England.

Q. What was the character of this prince?

A. He was very religious, and inherited much of the piety of his father. All the cotemporary historians say, he was unlearned, and remark this as very extraordinary; from whence it is probable, the kings used anciently to give their children

dren great learning, and that it was uncommon to see any who had not studied, or required some knowledge of the sciences.

Q. Where was his body interred?

A. At St. *Dennis*, and his heart at the Dominicans of *Paris*, who demanded and obtained it of the king; notwithstanding the opposition of the monks of St. *Dennis*, who said it belonged to them.

PHILIP IV. surnamed the FAIR.

Q. WHO succeeded *Philip* the Hardy?

A. His eldest son *Philip*, surnamed the *Fair*; who, by his marriage with *Jane*, queen of *Navarre*, obtained the possession of that kingdom.

Q. Why was he called the *Fair*?

A. From his extraordinary beauty, and gracefulness of person.

Q. Was his reign peaceable?

A. For the first seven years only; for, in the eighth, a war broke out between him and *Edward* I. of *England*, which lasted several years.

Q. What was the occasion of this war?

A. The cruelty of the *Normans* to some *English* sailors, whose ship was drove in a storm on the coast of *Normandy*; which the inhabitants not only plundered, but murdered the sailors.

Q. How did the king of *England* resent this treatment?

A. Instead of making complaints, he sent a fleet directly to *Arragon*, and plundered several towns upon the coast, in the year 1293. The war

war being thus declared, it was carried on with great vigour, in which the *English* had always the advantage, by the assistance of the *Flemmings*, with whom *Edward* had previously made an alliance, by contracting a marriage between his son and the daughter of *Guy* earl of *Flanders*.

Q. Did this alliance prove of any further advantage to the king of *England*?

A. This alliance, and the treaty of peace, which was afterwards concluded between the two kings, served only to heighten the glory of king *Philip*.

Q. Is there any thing farther memorable of king *Philip*?

A. He having refused to obey the orders of pope *Boniface VIII.* bishop *Bernard*, his legate, insolently told *Philip*, "That the pope was sovereign of all kings; and, if he did not obey his commands, he would excommunicate him."

Q. Was not *Philip* offended at this insolence?

A. He thereupon imprisoned *Bernard*, and made the following reply to the pope's bull. "Your very great stupidity is to know, that, in temporal affairs, we are subject to none; and that whoever believes the contrary, we believe to be no better than fools and madmen." Upon this, *Boniface* laid the kingdom under interdiction, excommunicated the king, deposed him, and declared his subjects absolved from their oath of allegiance.

Q. What was the consequence of this?

A. *Boniface* dying soon after; *Bennet*, or *Benedict XI.* his successor, a wise and good man, and a lover of public tranquility, sent the king a bull.

bull of absolution for himself and all his subjects; but died eight months after his election.

Q. What remarkable events happened in this reign?

A. *Clement V.* being elected pope, and crowned at *Lyons*, numbers of people having got upon an old wall to see the procession, *John*, the second duke of *Bretagne*, was buried under the ruins, the pope was thrown from his horse, the triple crown was beaten from his head, and the finest diamond in it, of immense value, was lost, in the year 1305. This pope, being well acquainted with the pretensions of the *Romans*, never went into *Italy*, being content to govern the ecclesiastical states by his legates; in which he was imitated by his successors, and during his time the holy see was transferred to *Avignon*: in his time also, the order of *knights templars* was abolished; the sedentary parliament of *Paris* was established; and the *knights hospitallers* of *St. John* of *Jerusalem* took the island of *Rhodes* from the *Turks*, from whence they were afterwards called the *knights of Rhodes*; and the earldom of *Lyons* was reunited to the crown.

Q. What issue had *Philip*?

A. He had three sons, *Lewis* king of *Navarre*; *Philip* earl of *Poitou*; and *Charles* earl of *Marche*.

Q. How long did he reign?

A. Twenty eight years; and, being hunting in the forest of *Fontainbleau*, a boar run through his horse's legs, threw him down, and bruised him in such a manner, that he fell sick and died, in the year 1314.

LEWIS X.

Q. WHO succeeded *Philip the Fair*?

A. His son *Lewis*; who had been crowned king of *Navarre*, in the life time of his father.

Q. Is there any thing remarkable to observe of this prince?

A. Nothing more, than that he died the same year he was crowned king of *France*, when he was preparing for a war against *Robert* earl of *Flanders*; whom he had declared a rebel, for taking some of the towns held by *Philip* his father.

PHILIP V. surnamed the LONG.

Q. WHO became king of *France*, after the death of *Lewis X*?

A. His brother, *Philip* earl of *Poitou*; though the crown should have descended to *Jane* the daughter of *Lewis X*. if the *grandeess* would have submitted to a female government.

Q. Was this the first time the *Salique law* was alledged in *France*?

A. Yes; there had been no occasion before to examine whether there was a law which excluded daughters from succeeding to the crown; it having always passed from father to son; or from a brother, dying without children, to his next brother, through all the races.

Q. How

Q. How long did *Philip V.* reign ?

A. But five years: during which time, he shewed all the marks of wisdom and moderation, that could be expected from a prince who reigned in peace.

Q. For what reason was *Philip V.* surnamed the *Long* ?

A. From his greatness of stature.

Q. Where, and when, did he die ?

A. He died at *Paris*; but some say at *Fontainebleau*, in 1321.

CHARLES IV. surnamed the FAIR.

Q. WHO succeeded *Philip V.*

A. His brother, *Charles IV.* of whom there is but little recorded; except, that during the time of his reign, he gave marks of all the virtues requisite to form a great prince; and was particularly severe in his observance of justice.

Q. Is there nothing more to observe of this prince ?

A. The only thing historians blame in his conduct, is, that he was the first king of *France*, who permitted the pope to raise the tenths of the ecclesiastical revenues throughout his dominions.

Q. How long did he reign ?

A. He died in 1327, in the seventh year of his reign; leaving only one posthumous daughter. Thus ended the race of *Philip the Fair*; which some have attributed to the vengeance of heaven; punishing that king, even in his posterity, for the injustice he had committed upon the *Templars*.

PHILIP

PHILIP VI. of *Valois*.

Q. HOW came *Philip VI.* to be raised to the throne?

A. He was cousin-german to the three last kings, grandson of *Philip the Hardy*, and son of *Charles* late earl of *Valois*; who, on the death of *Charles the Fair*, took the regency of the kingdom, till the queen, whom the king had left with child, should be delivered; which proving a daughter, *Philip* took possession of the kingdom.

Q. Did not *Edward III.* king of *England*, son of *Isabella*, who was the daughter of *Philip the Fair*, put in his claim to the crown of *France*, at this time?

A. Yes; he asserted, that, as he was the grandson of *Philip the Fair*, he ought to succeed him before *Philip of Valois*, who was only his nephew: however, *Philip* kept possession; and *Edward III.* of *England*, not having paid homage to *Philip*, which he was obliged to do, in quality of duke of *Guienne*, the king summoned him to come and discharge this duty.

Q. Did *Edward* pay homage to *Philip*?

A. Being still a minor, he, with extreme reluctance, was obliged to submit: for this purpose, he went to *Amiens*, with a splendid equipage, attended by a thousand horsemen; where *Philip* received his homage, in presence of the kings of *Navarre*, *Bohemia*, and *Majorca*, in 1329.

Q. What was the consequence of this submission?

A. It

A. It proved fatal to *France*; against which *Edward* declared war, made dreadful havoc, carried his victorious arms to the very gates of *Paris*, and afterwards gained the famous victory of *Cressy*.

Q. What loss did the *French* sustain, in this engagement?

A. Among the slain, were the king of *Bohemia*; the duke of *Alençon*, king *Philip's* brother; the duke of *Lorraine*; the earl of *Flanders*; the earl of *Bois*; with fifteen other noblemen of distinction, one hundred and twenty knights, and more than eighty standards.

Q. Who had the honour of this victory?

A. *Edward* prince of *Wales*, surnamed the *Black Prince*, then but sixteen years of age; after this battle the king of *England* laid siege to *Calais*; which, having held out eleven months, was obliged to surrender, for want of provision, in 1347.

Q. Is there any thing further worthy of observation in the reign of *Philip VI*?

A. In the year 1349, *Robert* earl of *Viennois*, now called *Dauphiné*, having no children, gave that province to the king of *France*; upon condition, that the first born son of *France*, should espouse *Jane* of *Bourbon*, whom he had bought in marriage; and also, that the presumptive heir of the crown should bear the title of *Dauphin* for ever; and in the same year *Philip* of *Valois* died.

Q. What have historians remarked of this prince?

A. In the beginning of his reign he was called the fortunate, from the unexpected good fortune by which he had come to the crown, and the good success he had in all his enterprizes: but fortune

was

was not so favourable to him in the course of his reign.

Q. Did not the wars he had to maintain with the *English*, reduce him into great want of money?

A. Yes; and he invented a new means to get it, without an additional tax upon his subjects; which was, to buy up all the salt made in his dominions, and sell it again at such price as he pleased; from whence the king of *England*, in derision, called him the *Salt-merchant*. Ever since that time, the kings of *France* have been masters of the salt selling it in their name throughout the kingdom, excepting a few places which have redeemed themselves from the impost.

JOHN I.

Q. WHO succeeded *Philip VI.*

A. His eldest son *John*, who was crowned at *Rheims*.

Q. What character have historians given of him?

A. They say, he had great qualities; but was more unsuccessful against the *English* than his father: for, having assembled an army of eighty thousand men, he marched against *Edward* prince of *Wales*; who, having with him an army of twelve thousand, made incursions quite to the gates of *Bourges*; after which, *John* came up with him, at a place called *Maupertuis*, near *Poitiers*, and obliged him to fight.

Q. What was the event of this battle?

A. Very

A. Very glorious for the prince of *Wales*; who entirely routed the *French*, took king *John*, and *Philip* his fourth son, prisoners; and killed about 6000; among whom, were the duke of *Bourbon*, the constable of *France*, fifty of the greatest noblemen of the kingdom, and eight hundred gentlemen. This battle being fought in 1356.

Q. Did not the taking of the king prisoner throw all *France* into a great consternation?

A. The king of *Navarre*, having escaped out of prison, filled the kingdom with factions and rebellions against the dauphin, who was regent; of whom the *Parisians* were the most insolent.

Q. Did not the peasants of *Picardy*, also at this time, enter into a confederacy?

A. Yes: which was called the *Jacquerie*; and its origin was this: the peasants of a village in *Beauvais*, being assembled upon a holiday, and discoursing upon the taking of the king, one among them, named *Jacquerie*, said, "This misfortune had been occasioned by the nobility, who had shamefully abandoned him, and fled instead of fighting; that they had no courage but to abuse the poor peasants; and that it would be a commendable action to make a general massacre of them, in order to free the country from their tyranny." This proposition being approved, they armed themselves, with what they could get, and began to discharge their fury upon the lord of the place; whom they seized, ravished his wife and daughter, before his face, then killed them, and him also; after which they plundered and burnt his house. Having seized another gentleman in the neighbourhood, they spitted him, roasted him, and compelled his wife to eat of his flesh.

Q. What

Q. What number of these insatuated people had *Jacquerie*, their leader, assembled; and how were they destroyed?

A. In a little time, they encreased to forty thousand; and being informed, that the duke of *Orleans*, the king's brother, was in the city of *Meaux*, with the dutchess his wife, several princesses, and three hundred ladies of quality, who had retired into it for safety; they forced the gates of the city, and besieged the market place, in which the prince, and the other noblemen and gentlemen had entrenched themselves; with design to put them all to the sword.

Q. How did the nobility escape their fury?

A. The earl of *Foix*, accidentally passing in his return to *Prussia*, with about sixty launces of *Gasccons*, hearing of the duke's distress, attacked the peasants; and, after a slaughter of seven thousand, routed them.

Q. What became of the rest?

A. They fled into *Picardy*; where the earl of *Coucy*, having assembled the nobility, a few days after, killed twenty thousand, and entirely exterminated them.

Q. What became of king *John*, after he was made prisoner?

A. He was sent to *London*, where he treated with the king of *England* for his liberty; but upon such terms, as the dauphin rejected: whereupon *Edward* passed the sea with all his forces, resolving to carry on the war with greater vigour than ever; when he laid seige to the city of *Rheims*, but was obliged to raise it; and then distributed his troops into almost all the provinces: though the whole expedition ended in ravaging the country, particularly about *Paris*. The ill success of this expedition, disposed

disposed him to hearken to more reasonable conditions of peace, than what had been before offered; which was called the peace of *Bretigny*, where it was concluded, in 1360.

Q. What were the articles of this treaty?

A. That the king of *England* should keep *Poitou*, *Xaintonge*, the territory of *Aunies*, *Perigord*, *Limousin*, *Angoumois*, *Quercy*, and *Rouergue*; that he should resign all his possessions of *Anjou*, *Touraine*, and *Maine*; and should renounce the title of king of *France*.

Q. Was the battle of *Poitiers* productive of any thing remarkable in *England*?

A. Yes: till after this battle the *French* language was used in *England*, in all public acts; they pleaded in *French*, and the sentences and decrees were pronounced in this language, which was afterwards disused in courts of judicature.

Q. How long did king *John* live, after his return to *France*?

A. It was but three years after he left *England*, when he resolved to return there again.

Q. What was the cause of this voyage?

A. It proceeded from his love for an *English* lady: but he died, soon after his arrival at *London*, in 1363.

CHARLES V.

Q. WHO succeeded *John I*?

A. *Charles V.* his eldest son, who was crowned at *Rheims*; being, for his great prudence, surnamed the *Sage*.

Q. Did he continue the war with the *English*?

A. He never made war in person, but was almost always successful; and being perfectly acquainted with the king of *Navarre's* ill intentions, his brothers and lieutenants, gave battle to the *Navarrians*, and the *English* who were come to their assistance, commanded by the *Capitai de Buch*, who met with such an absolute defeat, that the *Capitai* was taken prisoner, and the *Navarrians* and *English* were almost all either killed or destroyed.

Q. What was this battle called?

A. The battle of *Cockereil*; which was the first occasion of *Bertrand of Gueselin's* being distinguished, who was afterwards constable of *France*.

Q. Did not this defeat prevent the king of *Navarre's* designs?

A. Yes: for some time: but *John* earl of *Montfort*, being in possession of several towns in *Bretagne*, and supported by the *English*, laid siege to the castle of *Auroy*; whereupon *Charles* earl of *Blois* marched against him, being joined by the *French*; and a battle ensued, in which the latter were defeated, most of the *French* officers being killed or taken; and, among others, *Bertrand of Gueselin* was made prisoner, by the *English*, in 1364.

Q. Of what advantage was this victory to the earl of *Montfort*?

A. The

A. The earl of *Blois*, after this, ceded to him the dutchy of *Bretagne*, of which he took possession; and being acknowledged its lawful duke, paid homage for it to the king, who at the same time granted a peace to the king of *Navarre*.

Q. Did *Charles V.* carry on the war against the *English*, after this defeat?

A. Ever since he came to the crown, he thought of nothing but being revenged on them, for the miseries they had brought upon *France*, by the last war; resolving to embrace the first opportunity that offered to quarrel with them, which happened at this juncture.

Q. What was the grievance the king of *France* complained of?

A. The prince of *Wales*, having imposed the tax of chimney-money throughout the dutchy of *Guienne*, and the territories depending on it; the principal lords thereof opposed it, and appealed to *Charles* as their sovereign: whereupon, the prince was cited to appear before the house of peers; which he refusing to comply with, *Charles* sent the king of *England* a declaration of war; and, the same day his letter was delivered, the *French* troops entered the earldom of *Ponthieu* in *Picardy*, and drove out the *English*, in 1369.

Q. Was not the king of *England* offended at this usage?

A. Some months after, he sent forces into *France*, and the war was carried on with great vigour in all the provinces; but the death of the prince of *Wales*, who was a wise and valiant general, happening at this time, changed the affairs of the *English*: for *Bertrand du Gueselin*, carrying on the war in *Bretagne*, against the *Bretons* and *English* united, soon after made himself master of

all that dutchy; and *Charles*, in recompence, made him constable of *France*, in 1370.

Q. Is there any thing else observable of this wise prince?

A. A little before his death, foreseeing that he should leave his son a minor; he ordered, that, for the future, the kings of *France* should be of age at fourteen years: but this ordinance was not published, or registered in the parliament, till twelve years after.

Q. How long did *Charles V.* live?

A. Having truly merited the name of *Sage*, he died, in the year 1380, aged only forty-two.

CHARLES VI.

Q. WHO succeeded *Charles the Sage*?

A. His eldest son *Charles VI.* but, as he was yet a child, his three uncles, the dukes of *Berry*, *Anjou*, and *Burgundy*, had the regency of the kingdom.

Q. Which of these dukes had the chief management of affairs?

A. The duke of *Anjou*, whom the late king would willingly have excluded: but, after his death, *Anjou* seized upon all his treasures, which were very great, and applied them to his own use; nevertheless, his regency proved happy and glorious to the kingdom; for he drove the *English* out of *Bretagne*, and attached the duke thereof to the interest of the king.

Q. What were the other exploits of the duke of *Anjou*?

A. Being declared king of *Naples*, he undertook the conquest of it; in which he was unfortunate:
for

for *Charles*, then king of *Naples*, being master of all the strong places, avoided coming to a battle with him; hoping that want of provisions, and bad discipline, would ruin his troops; which happened sooner than *Charles* expected; and the duke, being no longer able to keep the field, shut himself up in *Barry*, where he was immediately invested by his enemies, and either died of his wounds, or was soon after poisoned.

Q. How did *Charles VI.* manage the government of *France*, after the death of the duke of *Anjou* his uncle?

A. Being informed that the *Ghenters* had rebelled against *Lewis* earl of *Flanders*, he marched against them, defeated them, and reinstated the earl of *Flanders* in his dominions; having gained this victory, at fourteen years of age, in the year 1382. Hitherto the kingdom of *France* had been governed by his uncles the dukes of *Burgundy* and *Berry*: but now his privy-council, and particularly the cardinal of *Laon*, persuaded *Charles* to take the government upon himself?

Q. What was the event?

A. The duke of *Burgundy* was so incensed at the cardinal, who first gave him this advice; that he caused him to be poisoned, in the year 1388; and, a few years after, the constable of *France* was assassinated, at the instigation of the duke of *Bretagne*.

Q. Was not the young prince incensed at these atrocious actions?

A. He immediately put himself at the head of his troops, and made long marches, in the heat of summer, to attack the duke of *Bretagne*; which disordered his senses.

Q. Did he proceed on this enterprize?

A. Yes: but as he marched on through *Mans*, there appeared a person to him, who, stopping his horse, said, “fire, go no further, you are betrayed;” and suddenly disappeared. While the king was revolving this odd incident in his mind, the page who followed him, and bore his lance, let it fall upon the head-piece of another. This noise surpris’d the king still more, who cried out, “I am betrayed,” killed some of those that were about him, and afterwards fell down, in appearance dead; remaining in that condition, for a considerable time, without shewing any signs of life, in 1392.

Q. How was the kingdom governed, while the king was in this delirious state?

A. *Lewis* duke of *Orleans*, the king’s brother, laid claim to the government; whom the duke of *Burgundy* excluded, under pretence of his youth: which occasioned an inveterate hatred between the houses of *Orleans* and *Burgundy*, and brought many calamities upon the kingdom.

Q. How long did *Charles VI.* continue delirious?

A. He had many lucid intervals, in which he had the perfect enjoyment of his senses; and, in one of these, he declared his brother the duke of *Orleans*, governor of the kingdom in his absence: whereupon, he raised forces, as also did the duke of *Burgundy*; but the latter, being supported by the nobles and people, kept possession of the government, until the duke of *Orleans* died, in the year 1404.

Q. What issue had the duke of *Orleans*?

A. Three legitimate sons, and one natural: the legitimate ones were *Charles* duke of *Orleans*, father of *Lewis XII.* *Philip* count *Vertus*, who died without issue; and *John* count *D’Angouleme*,
uncle

uncle of *Francis I.* the bastard being *John* count de *Dunois*, from whom the house of *Longueville* is descended.

Q. Was not *France* divided into factions, occasioned by the houses of *Orleans* and *Burgundy*, during the king's phrenzy?

A. Yes: and *Henry V.* king of *England*, taking advantage of their divisions, landed in *Normandy*, with an army of 50,000 men, and laid siege to the city of *Harfleur*; which was obliged to surrender, after some months, for want of provision.

Q. Did not *Henry* pursue his conquests?

A. No: he marched towards *Calais*, with design to embark for *England*; but the *French* troops being assembled, pursued and surrounded him; when he, though much inferior in number, was obliged to fight them, near *Agincourt*; where he gained a compleat and unparallelled victory: while the duke of *Burgundy* advanced with his troops towards *Paris*.

Q. Who was at the head of affairs in *France* at this time?

A. During these transactions, the dauphin died: whereupon *Charles* duke of *Touraine*, the fifth and last son of the king, took the title of dauphin, and duke of *Guienne*; the king having in parliament declared *Henry* of *England* a rebel, and deprived him of that duchy.

Q. How did *Charles* of *Touraine* manage the government, while it was now in a manner at the mercy of the *English* and *Burgundians*?

A. He first applied himself to prevent the duke of *Burgundy* from becoming master of *Paris*, and the person of the king; for which purpose he commanded him to quit the kingdom.

Q. Did the duke obey his command?

G. 4.

A. For.

A. For the present he did ; but returned again the year following, and took the towns of *Rouen*, *Rheims*, *Chalons*, *Troyes*, *Beauvois*, *Senlis*, and others ; while the king of *England* seized upon *Maine* and *Normandy*.

Q. How did the dauphin extricate himself from these difficulties ?

A. He first removed queen *Isabella* of *Bavaria*, who had been entrusted with the government, and behaved ill in it, to *Tours* ; where the duke of *Burgundy* had an interview with her : the result of which conference was, that the city of *Tours* should be delivered to the duke, who brought with him the queen, and united with her against the dauphin, in 1417.

Q. Was the war still carried on between the dauphin and the duke of *Burgundy* ?

A. Seemingly, with great vigour ; nevertheless, the duke shewed a desire for peace ; and, that it might be concluded with more facility, the city of *Monterau* was chosen for an interview ; the bridge over the river being fixed upon for the place. Barriers were accordingly put up at the two ends of the bridge, and the same in the middle, where the duke and dauphin met ; but, in this interview, the duke was killed, on the 10th of *September* 1419.

Q. Did he leave any issue ?

A. Yes : *Philip*, surnamed the *Good*, was his son and successor ; who, as though he had been vested with royal authority, concluded a peace with the king of *England*, and entered into an agreement with him to make war against the dauphin ; having, to engage the king more firmly in this enterprize, put into his hands the city of *Paris*, and seven others of the best in the kingdom.

Q. What

Q. What measures were pursued by the dauphin, in the mean time ?

A. He was reduced to the provinces of *Anjou*, *Poitou*, and *Berry*; and with much difficulty resisted his powerful enemies.

Q. Did the queen's hatred for the dauphin still continue ?

A. She carried it so far, that, besides the treaty of peace she had concluded with the *English*, by means of the duke of *Burgundy*, she concluded a second with them; by which the king gave his daughter *Catherine*, widow of *Richard II.* to *Henry V.* king of *England*; declared him regent of the kingdom, and his successor to the crown, in prejudice of the dauphin his only son.

Q. What was the consequence of this treaty ?

A. As soon as it was ratified, *Henry of England* repaired to *Troyes*, where he was received by the king, the queen, the duke of *Burgundy*, and the whole court; being there solemnly married to *Catherine*, in the year 1420.

Q. Did *Henry* return to *England*, after the solemnization of his marriage with *Catherine* ?

A. No: He went from *Troyes* to *Paris*, where the most considerable lords of the kingdom came, and took the oath of fidelity to him.

Q. What was done after these extraordinary proceedings ?

A. The dauphin was accused in parliament, before his father, and *Henry V.* king of *England*, of rebelling against the king, of killing the late duke of *Burgundy*, and of having been the cause of great troubles in the kingdom; after which, he was cited to appear at the marble-table, to answer these accusations.

Q. Did the dauphin appear on this summons ?

G 5.

A. No:.

A. No : whereupon his judges, who called themselves the court of parliament, issued out a decree, whereby he was banished and disinherited ; and nothing thought of but carrying on the war against him.

Q. In what manner was this war begun ?

A. By besieging some places in the neighbourhood of *Paris*, which shewed an inclination to embrace his interest : accordingly, they first invested *Melun* ; the kings of *France* and *England*, and the duke of *Burgundy*, being present at this siege. *Melun* was bravely defended ; but, at length, obliged to capitulate, for want of provisions. After the taking of this city, the king of *England*, and the duke of *Burgundy*, laid siege to the city of *Meaux* ; of which they made themselves masters also, after seven months : thus, having taken all the towns near *Paris*, *Henry* went into *England* about the affairs of his own kingdom.

Q. To whom did *Henry* commit the charge of his affairs in *France*, during his absence ?

A. To his brother the duke of *Clarence*, who was killed in an attempt to surprize the city of *Beaugé* in *Anjou*. His death obliged the king of *England* to return into *France* ; but, a few months after his arrival, he died at the wood of *Vincennes*, aged 34 ; his son *Henry VI.* whom he had by *Catherine* of *France*, being only nine months old at his death.

Q. How long did *Charles VI.* live after the death of *Henry V.* ?

A. But two months ; for he died at *Paris*, in the hotel of *St. Paul*, on the 20th of *October*, 1422 : whereupon the young king of *England* was vested with the title of king of *France* ; and his uncle, the duke of *Bedford*, took that of regent of the kingdom.

CHARLES VII.

Q. WHO succeeded *Charles VI*?

A. His youngest and only son *Charles VII.* who resided at *Bourges*.

Q. What was the the first memorable event which happened under his reign?

A. The duke of *Alençon*, having taken the city of *Verneuil* in *Normandy* from the *English*; the duke of *Bedford* marched to retake it, and gave him battle, in which *Alençon* was defeated and taken prisoner; and the city of *Verneuil* retaken by the *English*, in 1423.

Q. Who was constable of *France* at this time?

A. The king gave this post to *Artus* of *Bretagne*, earl of *Richmond*, and brother to the duke of *Bretagne*; who first signalized himself at raising the siege of *Montargis*, which had been invested by the *English* upwards of two years, where *Artus* attacked their camp and put them to flight.

Q. Was this defeat attended with considerable advantage?

A. No: for, a few months after, the earl of *Salisbury* and lord *Talbot*, two famous *English* commanders, besieged the city of *Orleans*, which was saved for the present, by the courage and conduct of the count de *Dunois*; to recompense whose good services, the king gave him the earldom of *Longueville*, which he afterwards erected into a dutchy; and from him is descended the house of *Longueville*.

Q. Where was *Charles VII.* during these transactions?

A. At *Chinon*, in *Anjou*, where he gave himself little trouble about his affairs; notwithstanding

ing the count de *Dunois* earnestly exhorted him to assemble his forces, to put himself at their head, and to march against the enemy.

Q. Was the siege of *Orleans* still continued by the *English*?

A. Yes: for, though the earl of *Salisbury* was killed before it, by a cannon shot, the lord *Talbot* alone continued the siege.

Q. Is there any thing further remarkable, concerning the siege of *Orleans*?

A. At this time, a young maiden of about nineteen years of age, named *Jane D'Arc*, being brought into the king's presence, said, "that God had sent her to drive the *English* from before *Orleans*, and to conduct his majesty to be crowned at *Rheims*;" for which purpose, she desired to be furnished with arms and troops, that she might march and attack the enemy.

Q. Did the king comply with her request?

A. A body of troops, with provisions, were immediately sent to the relief of *Orleans*; under the command of the count de *Dunois*, accompanied by the maiden.

Q. How did *Jane* behave on this occasion?

A. She first attacked one of the enemy's quarters, forced it, killing and taking all the *English* therein. Two days after, she attacked them in a bastion they had lately taken, and drove them out. At last, the valour of the count de *Dunois*, seconded by that of the *maid*, obliged the *English* to raise the siege, about a year after they begun it.

Q. How did the king behave, after raising the siege of *Orleans*?

A. At the persuasion of the *maid*, he assembled a great army and marched to *Rheims*, to be crowned

crowned and consecrated ; though this city was in possession of the *English*.

Q. Did the success of this progress answer his majesty's expectations ?

A. As he was so successful, as to take the cities of *Troyes*, and *Chalons*, on the way ; he had scarce appeared before *Rheims*, when the inhabitants opened the gates to him, and drove out the *English*. Next day he was crowned and consecrated, and then marched to *Paris* ; taking all the towns, which lay in his way, that were in the possession of the *English*.

Q. Did not the *English* and *Burgundians* endeavour to retake the towns which had surrendered to *Charles* ?

A. Yes: they first laid siege to *Compiègne*, which had surrendered to the king in his journey to *Rheims*. The maid threw herself in there to defend it, made frequent sallies with success, and killed a great number of men : but one day, in the heat of an engagement, advancing too far, and not considering whether or no she was followed ; she was surrounded, and taken prisoner, by *John* of *Luxemburg*, who commanded the *Burgundians*, in 1430.

Q. What usage did she meet with from her captor ?

A. *John* sold her to the *English*, who conducted her to *Roan*, where they brought her to a trial ; and, though they could form no accusation against her, but that of having worn the habit of a man, she was condemned to be tied to the stake alive, and burnt for a witch. Thus died this illustrious maiden, after having signalized her valour for the service of her country, during the space of one year.

Q. What

Q. What character have historians given of this maiden?

A. That she had extraordinary wit and courage; was very expert in the management of a horse, in which she had been exercised, by often riding them to water at a country-inn, where she had some years been a servant. That the count de *Dunois* instructed her what to say to the king, and took occasion to tell him, that he ought by his care, courage, and industry, to second this miracle which God had wrought in his favour. And that her death was a great affliction to the *French*.

Q. Did the city of *Compiègne* surrender after the loss of *Jane of Arc*?

A. It held out near six months after, till the arrival of the count de *Vendôme* and the marshal de *Bouffac*, who forced the enemy's camp, and defeated them.

Q. Did not the pope endeavour to conclude a peace, between *France* and *England*, about this time?

A. He tried all means to effect it; but, the king being unwilling to resign his kingdom, and the *English* refusing to restore it, it was utterly impossible: though, the duke of *Burgundy* being less difficult to treat with, a peace was concluded between him and the king of *France*, in 1435, on certain conditions; the chief of which was, that the king should give up to the duke all *Picardy*.

Q. Was not *Charles VII.* delivered from his greatest difficulty by means of this peace?

A. He now used his utmost efforts to reduce the city of *Paris*; and having a secret correspondence with some of the inhabitants, they promised to deliver up the gate of *St. James*, to the count de *Dunois* and the constable of *France*.

Q. Did

Q. Did they perform this promise?

A. Yes: and a terrible slaughter ensued; for the Parisians, as soon as they beheld the king's troops in the city, charged the *English* on all sides; killed a great number; and would have massacred them all, if they had not fled for refuge into the bastille, where they were immediately besieged: but, instead of making any resistance, they only desired leave to retire in safety, which was granted them.

Q. Did *Charles* engage in any other enterprize, after the taking of *Paris*?

A. He took *Pontoise*, by assault, in 1441; and, the continuation of his successes forced the *English*, at length, to consent to a truce: for, two years after, the lord *Talbot*, having besieged *Dieppe*, was defeated by the dauphin, when he lost his cannon, and a great number of his soldiers: whereupon a truce was agreed upon between the two crowns, for twenty-two months, in 1444; which was afterwards prolonged for three years.

Q. Did this truce continue for the time therein stipulated?

A. In 1448, the *English* having committed some acts of hostility, *Charles* again took up arms, and reduced the greatest part of *Normandy* under his obedience; after which he caused *Roan* to be besieged by the count *de Dunois*.

Q. Who was governor of *Normandy*, for the king of *England*, at this time?

A. The duke of *Somerſet*; who, not being able to defend himself against his numerous enemies, offered to surrender all the towns in *Caux*.

Q. Was this offer accepted by the count *de Dunois*?

A. He added these conditions to it; that the *English* should depart without their arms; and that

that the duke of *Somerset* should pay the king fifty thousand crowns for his ransom: which conditions were strictly observed, and all the towns given up, in 1450; whereby *Charles VII.* became master of all *Normandy*.

Q. Where did the king carry his arms, after the conquest of *Normandy*?

A. Into *Guienne*, which he entirely reduced, and reunited to the crown of *France*, in 1451. Thus the *English* were stripped of all their possessions, except *Calais*; which was not retaken till the year 1557, under the reign of *Henry II.*

Q. Was not *Charles VII.* greatly disturbed by a disagreement between him and the dauphin, towards the latter end of his reign?

A. Yes: and some ill designing people; having told him that his son intended to poison him; the fear thereof made such an impression upon his mind, that he abstained from eating and drinking for seven or eight days together.

Q. What was the consequence of his refraining thus long from any sustenance?

A. He was at last so strongly pressed by the physicians, that he consented to take some; but the passages were closed in such a manner, by his long abstinence, that he could get nothing down; so that he died, in a few days, at *Meun in Berry*, in 1461.

Q. Is there any thing further to remark of this prince?

A. His reign was taken up in a war, which lasted almost as long as he lived; but in which he was so successful, as to reconquer all his dominions, and drive the *English* out of *France*; from whence he obtained the surname of *Victorious*: he was likewise good-natured, generous, sincere, and beneficent.

LEWIS XI.

Q. WHO succeeded *Charles VII*?

A. *Lewis XI.* his son, aged forty two, who was in *Flanders* when his father died; but, being informed thereof, he immediately repaired to *Rheims*, in order to be crowned.

Q. What was the character of this king?

A. His temper was very different from that of his father; for he was severe, suspicious, a dissembler, and an enemy to all those whose riches or power rendered them independant on him. He had a nice discernment and deep penetration; being particularly remarkable for his address in making his advantage of times and circumstances; but regarded his promises as nothing.

Q. Did not he assume a more absolute authority over his subjects, than his predecessors had done?

A. He augmented the taxes by one half, and added others by his own authority; never consulting the states of the kingdom on any affairs; which was contrary to the custom of his predecessors, in all ages.

Q. Is there any thing else remarkable of *Lewis*, on his ascending the throne?

A. In the beginning of his reign, he had an interview with the king of *Castile*.

Q. What was the occasion of this interview?

A. A difference between the kings of *Castile* and *Arragon*, concerning some places in their frontiers; about which they could come to no agreement; but resolved to make *Lewis* their arbiter.

Q. How

Q. How did he adjudge the difference ?

A. In favour of the king of *Castile* ; and, at the same time, assisted the king of *Arragon* with troops against the *Catalans*, who had revolted : he also lent him a considerable sum of money ; for the security whereof, the country of *Roussillon* was mortgaged to him ; which engagement afterwards became the occasion of a considerable war, in 1462.

Q. Did not *Lewis* also begin to exercise his authority over the great men of his own kingdom ?

A. He first resolved to take away from the duke of *Burgundy* all that his father had been obliged to give up to him, and began with seizing all the great towns which had been given to the duke, and the count de *Charolois* his son. He also forbid the duke of *Bretagne*, to stile himself duke of *Bretagne by the grace of God* ; as being terms only proper to be used by princes, who held their governments under God alone.

Q. Were not the dukes of *Burgundy* and *Bretagne* offended at this usage ?

A. Yes : it determined the duke of *Bretagne* to have an interview with the count de *Charolois*, and the duke of *Bourbon* ; in order to bring all those princes and lords, who were discontented with the king, into a league against him.

Q. Did not *Lewis* know something of what passed between them ?

A. He was too diffident and penetrating, not to be apprized of it ; and this knowledge engaged him in an enterprize, which he afterwards disowned ; though without making the people change their sentiments of it.

Q. What was this ?

A. He

A. He ordered the bastard of *Rubempre* to go on board a ship, with forty armed men, either to seize or kill the count *de Charolois*.

Q. Where was the count at this time?

A. In *Holland*, in a house of pleasure at the *Hague*; and had but very few attendants: nevertheless, *Rubempre* failed in his design; being himself seized with two of his men, and confined in prison, where he confessed the fact.

Q. What was the consequence of this?

A. The king sent an embassy to the duke of *Burgundy*, composed of the count *d'Eu*, *Morvilliers* chancellor of *France*, and the archbishop of *Narbonne*; whom he charged to demand, that *Rubempre* should be set at liberty, and that the count should make him reparation for the injurious reports spread concerning him.

Q. Did the duke comply with these extraordinary demands?

A. No; he sent him word, that *Rubempre* was in the hands of justice; that if he was found innocent, he should be released; but if guilty, he should be punished.

Q. How did the count *de Charolois* behave on this occasion?

A. Next day, when the ambassadors were about to return, he whispered the archbishop of *Narbonne* to this effect; "Pray tell the king, from me, that he has given me a very severe lecture by his chancellor; but that I will make him repent it, before he is a year older:" which message the archbishop faithfully told the king, in 1464.

Q. Did the count keep his word with the king?

A. He used his utmost endeavours to gain the discontented princes and lords to his interest; particularly,

particularly, *Charles* duke of *Berry*, the king's brother, who was displeased with *Lewis XI.* because he had retrenched part of his salary, which was allowed him by the late king. *Charles*, at this time, being only twenty-eight years of age, was easily drawn into the scheme: accordingly, he withdrew from court, and retired to the duke of *Bretagne*, followed by a great number of nobility and others.

Q. What was the first step taken by these united powers?

A. They published a manifesto, declaring, that they took up arms for the publick good; on which occasion, their confederacy was called *the league of public good.*

Q. Who was the first that took the field?

A. The count de *Charolois*, at the head of a powerful army; who seized upon some towns in *Picardy*, styling himself lieutenant-general under the duke of *Berry*; and published declarations in his name, setting forth, that the people should be freed from all the taxes and imposts, with which the king had loaden them.

Q. What course did *Lewis* take to stop the progress of such powerful adversaries?

A. He judged it highly proper, to prevent the troops of the dukes of *Berry* and *Bretagne*, from joining those of *Burgundy*; and resolved to give battle to *Charolois* before their arrival: in which engagement, there were not many killed; both sides running away soon after the first charge; but, as the count kept the field, he claimed the victory. This battle, if it may be called one, being fought about eight leagues from *Paris*, in *July* 1465.

Q. What rout did the count take, after this skirmish?

A. Having

A. Having joined the leagued forces, he marched with them directly to *Paris*: the king likewise made all possible haste thither, but with little hopes of being received by the *Parisians*; declaring, if they refused him entrance, he would retire to the duke of *Milan* in *Italy*:

Q. Was *Lewis* admitted into the city?

A. Yes, and his presence inspired the citizens with fresh courage. About the same time, the duke of *Milan* sent a body of soldiers to his assistance, and advised him to conclude a peace with the leagued princes, whatever it cost him.

Q. Did the king follow this counsel?

A. The more readily, having received advice, that *Normandy* had, with the unanimous consent of the whole province, surrendered to the duke of *Berry*; so that, soon after, conferences were begun, and a peace was concluded, at *Constance*, in 1466.

Q. What was the event?

A. After the conclusion of the peace, the king, being a perfect master of dissimulation, highly carested the count *de Charolois*, in order to dissolve his union with the duke of *Berry*, whom he had resolved to render incapable of raising any more disturbances. In the mean time, the dukes of *Berry* and *Bretagne*, had a quarrel, and met at *Roan* to accommodate matters; but without effect. The king, taking advantage of this difference, made himself master of all *Normandy*; whereupon, the duke of *Berry* very readily entered into a reconciliation with the duke, and fled into *Bretagne*.

Q. Where was the count *de Charolois*, during these transactions?

A. He was now become duke of *Burgundy*, by the death of his father, and raised a considerable army,

army, which, that the king might not take umbrage at it, he gave out was designed for his service against the *English*; but, as soon as he was under no apprehension of a surprize, he told his majesty, that if he attempted any thing prejudicial to the duke of *Bretagne*, who was his ally, he should be obliged to assist him.

Q. Did not this occasion a fresh war between them?

A. Neither side was for engaging in enterprises, which would have employed their whole force, or for coming to an open war; for the duke had occasion for his against the *Liegians*, with whom he was at variance: the king, on the other hand, hoped to succeed in his designs by artifice rather than arms: so that both parties gave ear to proposals of accommodation, which were at last agreed to, between themselves at *Peronne*, a town in *Piccardy*, belonging to the duke of *Burgundy*.

Q. Was the new treaty of the same purport with that before made at *Constance*?

A. Only with the addition of a few articles, in favour of the confederates: but this treaty was scarce concluded, when the duke of *Burgundy* was informed, that the *Liegians* had broke the truce, and cut in pieces the *Burgundian* garrison, which the duke had placed there at the solicitation of the ambassadors of *Lewis*.

Q. Was not the duke enraged at this perfidy?

A. He instantly caused the gates of the castle, where the king was, to be shut, placed guards at each of them, and gave orders for the security of his person. He was three days irresolute concerning what he should do with the king; but his majesty found means to bribe those who had
any

any credit with, or influence over the duke, and they persuaded him to act with clemency.

Q. Did the duke set him at liberty ?

A. Upon condition that he should immediately go with him to besiege the city of *Liege*. Thus was the king forced to assist in it ; sometimes serving the duke of *Burgundy* with his counsel, sometimes with his authority, and sometimes even in person ; having himself charged the *Liegiens*.

Q. How long did this city hold out against the besiegers ?

A. Fifteen days ; when it was taken by assault, pillaged, burnt, and entirely demolished, in 1468.

Q. Did *Lewis* conform to the articles of the treaty of *Peronne*, afterwards ?

A. He only waited for an opportunity to break them, which he was sollicitated to do by the constable *de St. Paul*, who promised to deprive the duke of *Burgundy* of *St. Quintin*, and many other towns ; while the duke of *Guienne* also offered to take arms in his service.

Q. Were not these offers very agreeable to the king ?

A. He did not penetrate the motives of them ; therefore resolved to prepare for war : in consequence of which, he sent a summons to the duke, at *Ghent*, requiring him to appear before the parliament ; and, on his refusing to appear, the king begun the war.

Q. What was the event of this war ?

A. It was carried on with such success, that the constable *de St. Paul* made himself master of *St. Quintin* ; but, instead of giving up that place to the king, he kept possession of it himself ; as well as of many other places which he took.

The

The duke of *Guienne* also took several towns ; so that the affairs of the duke of *Burgundy* were reduced to a very bad state : in which situation the duke of *Bretagne* also attacked him on his side.

Q. How did he extricate himself from these powerful enemies ?

A. The king could not continue in peace ; but, as every thing of any considerable duration was insupportable to him, he grew weary of the war, and signified to the duke of *Burgundy*, that he would very willingly grant him a truce, if he would demand it ; which was accordingly demanded, and granted, in 1472 : about which time the duke of *Guienne* died,

Q. How did the duke of *Burgundy* employ himself, during the time of this truce ?

A. He solicited *Edward* king of *England* to declare war against *France* ; which having at last obtained, he went into *Germany*, to take possession of the dutchy of *Guelders* ; and at his return joined the *English*.

Q. Did not the union of the forces of *Burgundy* and *England* give *Lewis* great disquiet ?

A. He sent some men of abilities into *England* to treat concerning peace, who found means to corrupt the ministers by dint of money ; after which, they proposed to allow king *Edward* a pension of fifty thousand crowns a year ; to which proposal, they added a demand of the princess his daughter for the dauphin of *France*.

Q. Were these offers accepted by the king of *England* ?

A. They produced an interview between the two kings at *Pequigny*, where a truce was concluded between them and their allies for nine years ; and, by the same treaty, the princess of *England*

England was betrothed to the dauphin of *France*, in 1475.

Q. Was not the duke of *Burgundy* incensed at the conclusion of this treaty?

A. Though he was comprised in it, as an ally of the *English*, he refused to enter into it; but he offered the king to conclude another, upon the same conditions in his own name, which was accepted; and proved fatal to the constable of *France*; for the king and the duke of *Burgundy*, who could agree in nothing else, united in his ruin.

Q. Was the constable *de St. Paul*, informed of their design?

A. The moment he was acquainted with their agreement, he was so astonished, that he lost his courage and judgment; but was soon after seized and brought to the king; who delivered him into the hands of justice: upon which, he was soon after brought to a tryal, and sentenced to be beheaded; being the same day brought to execution.

Q. How long did *Charles* duke of *Burgundy* live after?

A. Not long; being killed in an engagement with the *Swiss*, commanded by the duke of *Lorraine*, in 1477. The same year, *James de Armagnac*, and count *de la Marche*, were condemned, and executed, by decree of parliament.

Q. Did not *Lewis XI.* take advantage of the death of *Charles* duke of *Burgundy*?

A. He seized upon all his dominions soon after.

Q. Did the duke leave no issue?

A. Only one daughter, named *Mary*; of whose person the inhabitants of *Ghent* were in possession,

sion, and gave her in marriage to *Maximilian* duke of *Austria*, son of the emperor *Frederic III.* in the same year her father died.

Q. Did *Maximilian* recover the dutchy of *Burgundy*?

A. By the assistance of *Charles of Amboise*, who commanded his army, he soon conquered it.

Q. How long did the princess *Mary* live?

A. She died four years after her marriage; leaving two children, *Philip*, and *Margaret*; the latter of whom, the king demanded in marriage, for the dauphin his son.

Q. How did *Maximilian* approve of this alliance?

A. Not at all; but the inhabitants of *Ghent* nevertheless agreed to it; who gave her the two *Burgundies*, and the earldom of *Artois*, for her dowry; and sent her to *France*.

Q. Was there not an alliance concluded between *Lewis XI.* and the *Swiss*, about this time?

A. Yes.

Q. What were the conditions?

A. 1. That the king should allow the cantons twenty thousand livres a year, and twenty thousand in pensions to particular persons. 2. That the *Swiss* should oblige themselves to maintain six thousand men in the service of *France*, who should be paid by the king, in the year 1479.

Q. Was not *Lewis* now grown very old and infirm?

A. The nearer he approached his death, the more he augmented the magnificence of his dress; taking great pleasure in viewing himself in a glass, when he was thus magnificently habited.

Q. Where was his place of residence, at this time?

A. At

A. At *Plessis lez Tours*; where he became very suspicious, and would see very few persons; being even diffident of the dauphin, whom he confined at *Amboise*, suffering few persons to see him.

Q. Did he not set his son at liberty, before he died?

A. Perceiving himself approach to his end, he sent for him, and gave him several good instructions, which he made him swear to observe, and sent him back again. The next day, the king commanded the duke of *Beaueu*, to go to the king, meaning the dauphin, and serve him; he also sent him the greatest part of his officers, and ordered the chancellor of *France* to carry him the seals.

Q. How long did he survive this action?

A. He died the same day, aged sixty one years; being interred, according to his will, at *Notre Dame de Clery*, near *Orleans*, in 1483.

CHARLES VIII.

Q. WHO succeeded *Lewis XI*?

A. *Charles VIII.* his son, who, being permitted to see no body but his domesticks, had scarce learnt any thing, besides the puerile diversions of youth: his father constantly debarring him all correspondence with the princes and grandees of the kingdom, lest he should enter into confederacies with them, and one day give him as much trouble as he himself had formerly given his father.

Q. Would he not suffer him to be taught the knowledge of letters, nor of the *Latin* tongue?

H 2

A. He

A. He only suffered him to get by heart these words, *qui nescit simulare, nescit regnare*: “He who knows not how to dissemble; knows not how to govern.”

Q. How old was *Charles*, when *Lewis* died?

A. Only fourteen; being entirely ignorant of affairs: whereupon the duke of *Orleans*, first prince of the blood, pretending the kingdom wanted a regent, asserted, that he was the most proper person to be chosen: but the duke of *Bourbon*, having the same pretensions, opposed the duke of *Orleans*; alledging, that, as *Orleans* was not above twenty four years of age, he himself stood in need of a tutor.

Q. In whose favour was this grand affair decided?

A. The states met at *Tours*, where they declared the kingdom had no occasion for a regent, and committed the care of the king's person to lady *Anne* of *France*, the king's sister, and wife of *Peter de Bourbon*, seignor of *Beaujeu*; who chose a number of counsellors, by whose assistance she governed the kingdom; giving the post of constable of *France*, to the duke of *Bourbon*.

Q. Was not the duke of *Orleans* offended at this nomination?

A. He retired from court to the duke of *Bretagne*, and prevailed on him to undertake a war against the king.

Q. What was the event?

A. The king's arms, under the conduct of *Lewis de la Tremouille*, were so successful in this war, that, at the battle of *St. Aubin*, he took the duke of *Orleans* and the prince of *Orange* prisoners; when the duke of *Bretagne* was compelled

pelled to sue for peace ; which was granted, upon conditions very advantageous to *France*.

Q. What were these conditions ?

A. The principal article was, that the castle of *Nantes* should be put into the king's possession : but this treaty was scarce concluded, when the duke of *Bretagne* died ; leaving two daughters, *Anne* and *Isabella*, in the year 1488.

Q. How were the daughters disposed of ?

A. *Anne*, the eldest, and heiress of the dutchy, had been promised in marriage, by her father, to *Maximilian* archduke of *Austria* ; but the king, being offended at it, entered *Bretagne* ; and, after taking several towns, made himself master of great part of the country ; when he demanded the princess *Anne* in marriage, and sent back to *Maximilian*, *Margaret*, his daughter ; consummating his marriage with the princess *Anne*, in 1480 ; soon after which, her sister *Isabella* died.

Q. Was not *Maximilian* incensed at these affronts, which he received from the king ?

A. He took up arms to obtain justice, and leagued with the *English* ; who, being in *France*, and having in vain endeavoured to surprize *Boulogne*, returned home.

Q. Did *Maximilian* make any advantage of this war ?

A. He took *Arras*, and *St. Omers* ; but, the death of the emperor his father, whom he succeeded, recalling him into *Germany*, he concluded a peace with *France*, upon advantageous terms ; for *Artois*, and the earldom of *Burgundy*, were restored to him.

Q. What was done in *France*, after the conclusion of this treaty ?

A. Whilst the court was entirely taken up in rejoicing for the king's marriage; *Ferdinand*, king of *Arragon*, demanded the restitution of the county of *Roussillon*, which had been mortgaged to the late king for three hundred thousand crowns; and offered to pay down the same in ready money.

Q. Was this demand complied with?

A. *Ferdinand*, having united the crowns of *Arragon* and *Castile*, and conquered the kingdom of *Granada*, by driving the *Moors* out of *Spain*, assumed the title of king thereof; and being now grown so powerful, the king's council thought it improper to augment his dominions; wherefore, they refused the three hundred thousand crowns, and declared the king should keep *Roussillon*.

Q. Did *Ferdinand* rest satisfied with this refusal?

A. He sent his ambassador to *Paris*; who, by bribes, prevailed upon the queen's confessor, being his own brother, to raise scruples in her mind, and to solicit the king, that *Roussillon* might be restored; upon condition, that king *Ferdinand* should never engage in a war against *France*, nor should assist those against whom the king might declare war.

Q. Was the county of *Roussillon* accordingly restored?

A. Yes; and the three hundred thousand crowns were generously returned.

Q. What was the design of this noble behaviour, in *Charles VIII*?

A. He meditated the conquest of the kingdom of *Naples*, whose subjects had revolted against *Don Alphonso* their king for his cruelty, and unanimously offered the kingdom to *Charles*.

Q. Did

Q. Did the king himself undertake this conquest?

A. He prepared for the expedition, and in a little time entered *Italy* with his troops. Antiquity can shew nothing similar to this expedition; for to behold with what readiness and submission all the towns received him, it might have been imagined he was a monarch visiting his dominions to receive the homage of his subjects. Thus he traversed *Italy*, rather like a prince triumphing after victory, than like a general who had enemies to engage: in which manner he entered *Pisa* and *Florence*, and afterwards marched to *Rome*.

Q. What reception did he meet with from the pope?

A. He was so strangely alarmed, that he caused *Ferdinand*, son of *Alphonso* king of *Naples*, to come into the city, to prevent the king's enterance; which he refused.

Q. Whither did the pope retire?

A. To the castle of *St. Angelo*; from whence he sent some cardinals to desire the king to enter as a friend, and not as an enemy: * but a cotemporary historian says, that the king, after this message, prostrated himself before the pope, then rose up, and saluted him face to face.

Q. Did he meet with the same success at *Naples*?

A. The king of *Naples*, seeing the *French* forces ready to fall upon him, imagined he could not do better, to prevent the *Neapolitans* being unfaithful to him, than to cede the crown to his son *Ferdinand*, who had given them no cause to hate him, and who accordingly was immediately crowned; while *Alphonso* retired into *Sicily*.

* *Guiaccardine*.

Q. Did this expedient change the minds of the *Neapolitans*?

A. Not in the least; for they sent deputies to the king of *France*, to assure him they were ready to submit.

Q. How did *Ferdinand* behave on this occasion?

A. Finding himself abandoned, he went to his father in *Sicily*, leaving the new-castle, and the egg-castle, to the care of the marquis de *Pescaire*; both which, after a few cannon shot, surrendered; and, after this, the king entered *Naples* in triumph, where he was crowned, in 1494.

Q. Did not the king pursue his conquests?

A. He was young, loved pleasure, and, when in possession of *Naples*, spent his time in diversions; instead of endeavouring to reduce the more distant towns of *Calabria*, into which the *Arragonian* troops had retired.

Q. What was the consequence of his indolence, and neglect?

A. He lost the kingdom by it; for the pope having solicited the potentates of *Italy* to form a league against *France*; the ambassadors of the emperor, the king of *Spain*, and the duke of *Milan*, with the pope's legate, assembled at *Venice*, and entered into a confederacy against him.

Q. What was the design of the confederate princes?

A. To prevent the king's return into *France*, to defeat him, and oblige him to abandon all he had taken in *Italy*.

Q. How did they execute their design?

A. The king had but eight thousand men with him, and they had an army consisting of forty thousand, with which they pursued him,
not

not with intent to fight, but to surround the king and all his army, that none of them might escape.

Q. What was the event of this enterprize?

A. The king, notwithstanding their superiority, marched against them, when he charged them so vigorously as to put them into confusion, on the 7th of July 1495; and, though the battle lasted only a quarter of an hour, the enemy lost three thousand men; while the rest of them were seized with such a panic, that the marquis de Mantua, and Francis de Gonsagues, general of the Venetians, were unable to rally them.

Q. Where did the king go after this engagement?

A. To *Ast*, a town in *Piedmont*, which belonged to him, where he arrived in ten days; having been followed by the enemy all the way; who, being unable to prevent his retreat, besieged *Navarre*, in which was the duke of *Orleans* with seven thousand men.

Q. Did not *Charles* endeavour to succour him?

A. Not being strong enough to attack so great an army, he gave ear to the proposals of peace for a year; which, being offered by the duke of *Milan*, was soon after concluded.

Q. What were the chief articles?

A. That the duke should have *Navarre*; and, whenever his majesty should come into *Italy*, he should permit him a passage, and serve with his troops against all his enemies.

Q. Were the *Venetians* included in this treaty?

A. Yes; but they remained irresolute for two months: though, when the peace was concluded, and the town of *Navarre* surrendered, twenty thousand *Switzers* arrived in the king's camp.

Q. Were not the king's former measures altered, by receiving this reinforcement ?

A. No ; the *Switzers*, being discontented with the king's proceedings, formed a design to seize his person ; who, being informed of it, retired to *Tren*, a town in *Montfaret* ; whence he crossed the *Alps* to *Lyons* ; and two months after he had advice of the death of the dauphin ; which was followed by those of his two other children.

Q. Did the enemy undertake any thing, during his stay at *Lyons* ?

A. *Ferdinand*, king of *Arragon*, came into *Italy* ; where, by the assistance of the pope and *Venetians*, he reconquered the whole kingdom of *Naples*.

Q. Did the king use no endeavours to regain this kingdom ?

A. Yes ; he assembled an army at *Ast*, and gave the command of the expedition to the duke of *Orleans*, who, being presumptive heir to the crown of *France*, because the king had no children, was desirous to stay and see the event of the king's sickness, who soon after died of an apoplexy at *Amboise*, in 1497, being in the 27th year of his age.

Q. What character have historians given of *Charles VIII* ?

A. That there never was a prince more remarkable for mildness and affability to all persons.

LEWIS XII. surnamed the father of his people.

2. WHO succeeded *Charles VIII* ?

A. Lewis XII. duke of Orleans.

2. Why was he called the father of his people ?

A. Because he had a real love for them ; because he freed them from their taxes ; and because he never raised great sums, though he had very considerable wars to maintain.

2. Who did he marry ?

A. He had been obliged to espouse Jane of France, sister of Charles VIII. whose personal imperfections rendered her very disagreeable ; for which reason he sought in marriage Anne of Bretagne, and had the happiness to please that princess. He therefore demanded of the pope a dissolution of his marriage with Jane ; which, being forced on him, was declared void ; and the parties were free to marry again.

2. Was not the princess Jane highly incensed at this usage ?

A. Instead of complaining, she expressed great joy at the advantages which the king would gain by espousing Anne of Bretagne.

2. What was the first military exploit in which Lewis XII. engaged ?

A. He was very desirous to recover the duchy of Milan, to which he was the lawful heir, and made necessary preparations to assert his right ; but, it being first requisite to establish a solid peace with Philip, son of the emperor Maximilian ; and which being agreed to, the king went to Lyons, the place of rendezvous for his troops ;

troops; from whence he marched into the *Milaneſe*, at the head of thirty thouſand men.

Q. What ſucceſs had *Lewis XII.* in this expedition?

A. The *French* on one ſide, and the *Venetians* on the other, made ſuch a progreſs, that *Lewis Sforza*, fearing to fall into the hands of the enemies, quitted *Milan*, and retired, with his treaſures and children, to *Maximilian* the emperor: whereby the *Milaneſe*, in a few days, was ſubjected to the king; and ſoon after the republic of *Genoa* voluntarily ſubmitted.

Q. Did the king meet with no further trouble, on this occaſion?

A. The miſbehaviour of the *French* in gariſon at *Milan*, ſo greatly incenſed the inhabitants, that *Lewis Sforza*, taking advantage thereof, returned from *Germany*, with twelve thouſand *Switzers*; and, being joined on his march by eight thouſand *Italians*, ſome *Milaneſe*, and others, entered that dutchy, where all the towns received him with joy; ſo that only the caſtle of *Milan*, and two or three fortified places, remained to the king.

Q. What courſe was taken by *Lewis*, on receiving this intelligence?

A. Without loſs of time, he ordered a conſiderable number of his troops to march under the command of *Lewis de la Tremouille*, the greateſt *French* general of his time.

Q. Did the ſucceſs of this expedition answer the king's expectations?

A. *Tremouille*, marched againſt *Sforza*, who, at that time, was employed in the ſiege of *Navarre*; before which place, he gave him battle, defeated him, took him priſoner, and ſent him into *France*, where he was confined in the caſtle of *Loches* in *Berry*, till his death.

Q. To

Q. To whom did the king give the government of it, after this victory?

A. The dutchy of *Milan*, being again subjected to him, he appointed *Charles* of *Amboise* governor of it; whose brother, cardinal *Ascagne*, had been made prisoner with *Sforza*; but, on account of his dignity, and at the solicitation of cardinal *Amboise*, was released in 1499.

Q. How did *Lewis* reward the officers employed in this unexpected war?

A. Not very liberally; whereupon they represented him as a sick man, incessantly calling for potable gold, as the only remedy for his disease.

Q. How did the king behave, when he was informed of this sarcasm?

A. He only laughed, and seemed pleased that his people thought him so good, as to dare to take such liberties with him. However, *Anne* his wife made ample amends for this fault in him, and very generously rewarded all those that had merit.

Q. In what other wars was *Lewis XII.* engaged?

A. His pretensions to the kingdom of *Naples*, joined to the solicitations of pope *Alexander VI.* who was an enemy to *Frederick* king thereof, determined him to undertake the conquest of that country: but as *Ferdinand*, king of *Spain*, had also some pretension to this kingdom; *Lewis*, first agreed with him, that they should jointly attack *Naples*; and, after they had conquered it, should divide it between them: the king being to have *Apulia*, and *Ferdinand* *Calabria*.

Q. To what place did *Lewis* first march on this expedition?

A. He made his entry into *Genoa*, where he was received with great magnificence; but *Capua* was the first place he took, which was carried by assault;

assault; and after taking some other towns, *Naples* also surrendered, in 1502. The *Spaniards*, on the other side, made a great progress in *Calabria*; so that *Frederic*, finding himself unable to oppose two such potent enemies, threw himself on the mercy of *Lewis XII.*

Q. How was he received by the king?

A. With all the marks of friendship which could possibly be expected, by a person in his situation: for *Lewis* gave him the dutchy of *Anjou*, and allowed him a pension of thirty thousand crowns; which he continued, even after *France* had lost the kingdom of *Naples*.

Q. How did the two kings agree, about the division of their conquests?

A. They differed so much about the limits of their respective dominions, that they came to blows; the *Spanish* army being commanded by *Gonsalvo de Cordova*; and the *French* by the duke of *Nemours*, who, contrary to the opinion of his officers, and much inferior in number, gave them battle at *Cerisoles*; but was defeated, and killed, in 1502: whereby the kingdom of *Naples* was lost again.

Q. Did this conquest put an end to the war between *Lewis* and *Ferdinand*?

A. *Ferdinand*, having received a signal affront from *Spain*, resolved to remain in *Italy*, where he was in possession of the kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily*; and, at the same time, sought in marriage *Mary of Orleans*, the king's sister; hoping, by this alliance, to keep the quiet possession of his dominions.

Q. In what manner did this project answer his intention?

A. *Lewis* granted him his sister, and concluded a treaty with him; by which he ceded the kingdom of *Naples*

Naples to Ferdinand, in consideration of the sum of seven hundred thousand crowns, in 1505.

Q. What other remarkable incidents happened about this time ?

A. *Philip* the archduke died ; leaving his son *Charles* of *Austria* under the guardianship of the king, for the earldom of *Flanders*, and his other territories, to prevent him from invading the latter.

Q. Did his majesty accept of this guardianship ?

A. Yes : and acquitted himself of it honourably to his ward ; appointing *Anthony de Croicy*, a person of great merit, to be his governor ; from whom this prince received an education suitable to the grandeur to which he was destined.

Q. How were the king's affairs transacted in *Italy* ?

A. The people of *Genoa* fell upon the nobles, and plundered their houses ; after which, being afraid that *Lewis* would punish them for these outrages, they revolted ; whereby the king was obliged to march with a great army against them. At the approach of his troops, the *Genoese* made a sally upon the van-guard ; but were repulsed with the loss of three thousand men : which bad success, joined to the king's presence, soon cooled their courage ; when they sent deputies to ask pardon, and to treat about conditions upon which they would surrender.

Q. What answer did they receive from the king upon this message ?

A. That they must either submit to his mercy, or expect to see their city abandoned to the fury of the soldiers. Shocked at this answer, the *Genoese* marched out, to the number of forty thousand combatants, and gave the *French* battle ; but were defeated, and lost great numbers ; *Paul de Noue*,

Noue, a dyer, who was their leader, and some other chiefs, being put to death.

Q. Where did the king go, after he had reduced the *Genoese*?

A. To *Savona*, where he had an interview with *Ferdinand* king of *Naples*, assisted by *Anthony Palavicini* the pope's legate.

Q. What was the design of this interview?

A. That the pope, the king, the emperor, and the king of *Spain*, should, in conjunction, declare war against the *Venetians*, under the conduct of *Lewis XII.*

Q. How did the *Venetians* withstand these combined armies?

A. They opposed the king with an army of fifty thousand men, commanded by *Nicholas Urfin* count de *Petillana*, who marched against him, and gave him battle, at *Caravagio*, in 1509, where he was defeated, with the loss of twenty thousand men: after which victory, all the towns, where the king appeared, surrendered to him; and he retained those belonging to the ecclesiastical state.

Q. Was not pope *Julius II.* offended at the king for with-holding his property?

A. He was afraid lest *Lewis* should become master of all *Italy*; representing, to *Ferdinand*, that it was their common interest to prevent his becoming too powerful; whereby he prevailed with this prince to league with him and the *Venetians* against *France*.

Q. What was the pretence for this rupture?

A. The king's refusal to deliver up the towns in *Italy*, to which the holy see had pretensions: whereupon the pope excommunicated *Lewis*, interdicted his kingdom, and gave it the first who could force it from him; at the same time, excommunicating all the princes who should espouse his interest.

Q. What

Q. What was the event of these violent proceedings?

A. *Charles of Amboise* dying about this time, the king gave the government of the *Milanese*, and the command of his armies, to his nephew, *Gaston de Foix*, duke of *Nemours*.

Q. How did this young prince behave in his new government?

A. He first defeated the *Switzers*, who, at the pope's sollicitation, had entered his territories, and forced them to take refuge in the mountains. He likewise gained many victories over the *Spaniards* and *Italians*; both separated, and united. He took several towns from the *Venetians*, and the pope; and at length laid siege to *Ravenna*, where he was opposed by all the combined forces.

Q. How did *Gaston* behave in this situation?

A. He marched against them, gave them battle, and defeated them, with very great slaughter.

Q. When was this victory obtained?

A. On *Easter-day*, in 1512; after which *Ravenna* was taken and sacked, and the greatest part of the ecclesiastical state was subjected to the king; whose great joy, for so many successes, was not sufficient to assuage his grief for the loss of the duke of *Nemours*.

Q. What did the pope meditate on this occasion?

A. He employed all the means in his power to stir up enemies against *France*, and engaged the emperor in the league, into which the king of *Spain* and the *Switzers* had already entered: while these last, who had been driven out of *Italy* by the duke of *Nemours*, returned into it with greater numbers, brought with them *Maximilian Sforza*, took *Milan*, and made themselves masters of that dutchy, in 1513.

Q. What

Q. What other affairs of consequence happened in this year ?

A. The king sent *Lewis de la Tremouille* against them ; but he was defeated by the *Switzers*, and returned to *France* ; about which time, the *Genoese* revolted, and restored their ancient form of republican government.

Q. Did the princes and republics which pope *Julius* had formed against *France*, still continue new enterprizes ?

A. The *Switzers*, who were in possession of the dutchy of *Milan*, entered *Burgundy*, and laid siege to *Dijon* ; which was defended for some time by *Lewis de la Tremouille* ; who, at last, entered into a treaty with them ; and, in consideration of a sum of money, prevailed with them to raise the siege, and renew their alliance with *France*.

Q. Did not *Henry VIII.* king of *England*, also, in this year, take advantage of the present situation of affairs in *France* ?

A. He crossed the sea ; and, in conjunction with the emperor, laid siege to *Terouenne*, which he took, and demolished the fortifications. *Tournay* likewise surrendered to him ; when, after gaining the battle of the spurs, and being satisfied with the success of his expedition, *Henry* returned into *England*.

Q. Did not *Lewis XII.* resent this injury ?

A. While he was making preparations for war against the *English*, his queen *Anne* of *Bretagne* died, in 1514 ; leaving, only two daughters, *Claudia* and *Rene* : the eldest of whom had been betrothed to *Francis de Valois*, duke of *Angouleme*, first prince of the blood, and presumptive heir to the crown of *France* : but this match not being approved by the queen, the king would not consent to it during her life ; though, soon after her death, the marriage was consummated.

Q. Was

OF FRANCE.

163

Q. Was there any thing else remarkable during the reign of this monarch?

A. The duke of *Longueville*, being a prisoner in *England*, entered into a treaty for the conclusion of a peace, which he at last effected: having also, at the same time, concluded a treaty of marriage between the king and *Mary*, the king of *England*'s sister, a princess of great beauty; who was received and espoused by *Lewis* at *Abbeville*, being afterwards crowned at *St. Dennis*.

Q. How was the king's attention engaged, after his second marriage?

A. In making preparations for the recovery of the dutchy of *Milan*; but, when all things were in readiness for this expedition, he was surprized with death, in 1515: being in the fifty-fifth year of his age.

Q. What was the character of this prince?

A. That no king ever had a greater love for his people, nor was better beloved by them.

Q. What became of queen *Mary*, after the decease of *Lewis* the XIIth?

A. *Henry VIII.* sent for her, and gave her in marriage to the duke of *Suffolk*, for whom she had a great inclination.

FRANCIS I.

Q. WHO succeeded *Lewis XII*?

A. As soon as it was certain that his widow was not with child, *Francis* earl of *Angouleme*, and duke of *Valois*, took upon him the title of King.

Q. How did *Francis I.* make out his right of succession?

A. His father, *Charles* of *Orleans*, was first cousin to *Lewis XII.* and grandson of *Lewis*, duke of *Orleans*,

Orleans, who was assassinated by the duke of *Burgundy*.

Q. What was his pedigree?

A. *Lewis* duke of *Orleans*,
 father of
Charles duke of *Orleans*, — and — *John* earl of
Angouleme,
 father of
Lewis duke of *Orleans*, *Charles* earl of *Angouleme*,
 king of *France*.
 father of
Francis I.

Q. How came he to be called duke of *Valois*?

A. This dukedom having been given to him by *Lewis* XII. he took upon him that title and dignity; the princes his successors having also borne the same.

Q. How old was he when he came to the crown?

A. Twenty-one years only; but was, at that age, endued with almost all those good qualities, both of body and mind, which might render him, as a man, and a great prince, compleatly accomplished.

Q. Is there any account of his other accomplishments?

A. His countenance was very agreeable, yet suitably majestic. His genius was lively, and penetrating; his memory great, his courage invincible, and his eloquence extremely persuasive. He had, moreover, a great love for learning and learned men, being generous, sincere, polite, humane, and easy of access to all persons: yet he wanted application to his affairs, and was too much addicted to pleasures.

Q. What was the first enterprize in which *Francis* was engaged?

A. The

A. The recovery of the dutchy of *Milan*; of which, duke *Sforza* had been put in possession by the *Switzers*; who had likewise declared themselves the protectors of that dutchy.

Q. Did not the emperor *Maximilian*, *Ferdinand* king of *Arragon*, and pope *Leo X.* enter into a league, to oppose the design of *Francis*?

A. Yes: but *Charles* of *Austria* did not engage in their conspiracy: so that, the peace with the *Low Countries* being strengthened, and that with *England* renewed, the king concluded a treaty with the *Venetians*; by which, they obliged themselves to assist him in the conquest of *Milan*, on certain considerations: but money being now the only thing wanting to carry his enterprize into execution, he raised a considerable sum by the sale of places and employments in the state.

Q. Was not this expedient looked upon as highly dangerous?

A. The parliament used its utmost efforts to prevent it; frequently remonstrating to the king, that those who had bought the power of administering justice, would, to reimburse themselves, most certainly sell: but his majesty would be obeyed.

Q. Were not the confederate princes apprehensive of the approaching war?

A. They contented themselves with having fifty thousand *Switzers* armed against *France*; and no longer thought of furnishing any more troops: however, the pope, knowing the *Switzers* were in want of cavalry, sent them one thousand five hundred men, under the command of *Prosper Colonna*, a general of great reputation.

Q. To whom did *Francis I.* commit the regency of his kingdom, when he departed for the *Milanese*?

A. To

A. To his mother madame *Louisa* of *Savoy*; who, at that time, was stiled countess of *Angouleme*.

Q. How did the king pass with his army through the *Alps*, where all the avenues were possessed and fortified by the *Switzers*.

A. When they were on the point of making an attempt to force their way in the face of the enemy, a peasant discovered a passage to the king hitherto unknown, through which he marched with the whole army, and surprized *Colonna* at dinner; taking him and all his cavalry prisoners: whereupon the *Switzers*, being thus deprived of their cavalry, and finding the principal towns of the *Milanese* began to surrender, hearkened to proposals for an accommodation; and a treaty was concluded, the conditions of which were, that they should give up to him the dutchy of *Milan*, for which he should immediately pay down the sum of three hundred thousand crowns, and six hundred thousand crowns three years afterwards; and should also settle a pension of sixty thousand crowns on *Maximilian Sforza*, then duke of *Milan*.

Q. How were these conditions performed?

A. The *Switzers*, being seduced by the artifices of the cardinal of *Sion*, posted themselves near where *Lautrec* was to pass with the money, with intention to seize it; but he, being informed of their motions by a spy, instead of advancing, retired with the treasure to a place of security.

Q. Where did the *Switzers* march after this disappointment?

A. To *Marignano*, against the *French* king; who, being informed of their perfidy, got in readiness, and waited for them in good order; both sides fighting with fury from two o'clock in the afternoon till night, on the third of *September*,

1515; and from day-break till noon the next day; when a retreat was sounded, and the *Switzers* retired, in some order, taking the road to *Milan*, leaving fifteen thousand slain upon the field of battle.

Q. How many men did the *French* lose in this engagement?

A. Three thousand; but the number of the wounded was much greater. Among those killed, the most considerable were, the prince of *Talmont*, only son of the duke de la *Tremouille*, *Bussy d'Ambois*, and the count de *Roie*.

Q. Was *Francis I.* present in this battle?

A. Yes: he slept some hours, without putting off his armour, on the carriage of a cannon, and remained in the field three days. Soon after this victory, all the *Milanese* was subjected to the king, except the castles of *Milan* and *Cremona*; into the former of which *Sforza* had retired: but, the king's forces having blown up part of the fortifications by a mine, *Sforza* surrendered the place upon terms.

Q. What were those terms?

A. That he should renounce all pretensions to the dutchy of *Milan*, retire, and live privately in *France*; in consideration of which, the king engaged to pay him annually sixty thousand ducats: whereupon the king sent him away, and then made his entry into *Milan*, with great magnificence.

Q. What farther conquests did *Francis* make, after these great successes?

A. It was thought he would have marched to *Rome*, and oblige the pope to accept of such conditions as he should impose; and that he would turn his arms against the kingdom of *Naples*, which was entirely destitute of forces for its defence.

Q. Which of these resolutions did he take?

A. To

A. To the astonishment of all *Europe*, he hastened back into *France*; and, by the first overtures which were made to him by the pope's nuncio, for an accommodation, concluded a treaty in two days honourable enough for himself: but the pope's intention was not to execute it; by which artifice, his expedition to *Naples* was deferred, and he lost the opportunity of conquering the kingdom:

Q. Did not *Ferdinand*, king of *Spain*, die about this time?

A. He died in 1516, and was succeeded by *Charles*, archduke of *Austria*, his grandson; which caused a great change in the general state of affairs: for *Charles*, finding himself obliged to go into *Spain* to take possession of the dominions which his grandfather had left him, thought it would be of consequence for him to put an end to those differences which had subsisted between *France* and the late king of *Spain*, touching the kingdoms of *Naples* and *Navarre*; whereupon, a treaty was accordingly concluded, at *Noion*.

Q. What were the articles of this treaty?

A. That the king of *France* should assist *Charles*, archduke of *Austria*, lord of the *Low Countries*, and king of *Spain*, to take possession of the territories depending on the crown of *Castile* and *Arragon*; that an offensive and defensive alliance should subsist between *France* and *Spain*; that *Charles* should relinquish the pretensions of the emperor his grandfather, and espouse *Louisa* of *France*, the king's daughter, then only one year old, whose dowry should be that part of the kingdom of *Naples*, which *France* was to have by the pretensions which had been made of it in 1502, between *Lewis XII.* and *Ferdinand*; and, in case the marriage should not be consummated, this part of the kingdom of *Naples* should be restored

to

to *France*. Finally, *Navarre*, within six months, should be restored to *Henry de Albert*:

Q. About what time was the death of the emperor *Maximilian of Austria*?

A. About two years after the treaty of *Noion*.

Q. What was the consequence of his death?

A. *Charles* king of *Spain*, his grandson, and *Francis I.* both pretended to the empire, and solicited the electors for their suffrages. The king sent the admiral *de Bonivet* with great sums of money to gain the electors: but, whether the ministers of *Charles* were more able, or whether the good fortune of this prince prevailed over the liberalities of *Francis*, *Charles*, however, was elected emperor at the age of twenty-one years; being the fifth of that name.

Q. Was this competition attended with any difference between the two royal candidates?

A. They pretended great friendship to each other before the election; but it was the cause of a war between them afterwards, which continued longer than their lives. For, as the intention of *Charles* was not to execute the treaty of *Noion*, *Francis* resolved to do himself justice by force of arms; and the two princes prepared for war.

Q. Did neither of the two kings seek an alliance with *England*?

A. That being a point of the utmost importance, it was fought by them both, with the greatest assiduity. *Francis* had an interview with *Henry VIII.* between *Ardes* and *Guines*; but the emperor went over into *England*. *Henry* immediately quitted *Calais* to meet him; where it was agreed, that this prince should be arbitrator of the difference between *Francis* and *Charles*, and should take up arms against *France*, in case *Francis* refused to submit to his arbitration; and the emperor had

the address even to engage *Henry* to his interest, in 1520.

Q. When did this war commence?

A. In 1521. both in *Navarre*, *Champaign*, and in *Italy*. The signior *d'Asparaut* brother of *Lautrec*, had orders from the king to throw himself into *Navarre*, which he did so successfully; that, in fifteen days, he conquered the whole kingdom; and from thence, pursuing his successes, he penetrated deeply into *Castile*: but the *Spaniards*, on this occasion, uniting against the *French*, drove them out of *Castile*, and even out of *Navarre*, taking *d'Asparaut* prisoner: thus, this kingdom was again lost, as suddenly as it was gained.

Q. What was done on the side of the emperor?

A. He sent the count *de Nassau* to oppose the signior *de la Mark*, who had commenced war against him on the frontiers of *Champaign*. *Nassau*, after having defeated him, deprived him of part of his territories, concluded a truce with him, and then took *Andres*, *Mouzon*, and laid siege to *Mezieres*: but this place was defended by the chevalier *Bayard*, who was too great a commander to let it be easily taken; so that the count of *Nassau*, after having been two months before the place, was obliged to retire.

Q. How did the affairs of *France* succeed in *Italy*?

A. By the terms of confederacy, *Leo X.* had leagued with the emperor to drive the *French* out of *Italy*, and the pope was to have the duchy of *Parma* and *Placentia*; while *Sforza*, who had relinquished his right to the king of *France*, was again to be put into the possession of the *Milanese*.

Q. What were the first conquests made by the confederate forces?

A. *Parma*,

A. Parma, Placentia, and Cremona ; after which they subjected the *Milanese*, and even obliged the city of *Milan* to surrender.

Q. How did *Lautrec*, the *French* general in *Italy*, behave on this occasion ?

A. Unable to resist the confederates, he sent his brother, the marshal *de Foix*, to the king, to press him for succours both of men and money ; accordingly, sixteen thousand *Switzers* were raised, and brought into the *Milanese* to him ; after which, he besieged and took *Navarra*.

Q. Did not the affairs of *France* begin to revive on the reduction of *Navarra* ?

A. The king took such effectual measures to cut off all supplies of provision both from the confederate forces and the revolted towns, that *Milan, Pavia*, and many other places, were, by famine, obliged to surrender ; after which, *Lautrec* resolved to attack the confederates with all his forces.

Q. Where was the confederate army at this time ?

A. Encamped at a village, named *Bicoque*, about a league from *Milan*, whose gardens were surrounded by broad and deep trenches ; where they defeated sixteen thousand *Switzers*, and repulsed the *French* troops, without quitting their intrenchments ; thereby regaining the *Milanese*.

Q. To whom did the king impute this bad success in *Italy* ?

A. To the negligence and incapacity of his officers ; which made him resolve, in *April, 1523*, to go thither in person, to regain what he had lost ; but, the next day, having received information that *Charles*, constable of *Bourbon*, had signed a treaty with the emperor, and put himself

under his protection, *Francis* was obliged to defer his departure.

Q. What was the purport of this treaty?

A. They agreed, that, as soon as the king of *France* had passed the *Alps*, the emperor should cause a powerful army to march through *Languedoc* into *France*; that the constable, with the provinces which depended upon himself, should declare war against *France*; that the fourteen thousand *Germans* in *Franche Compté* should join him at *Auvergne*, to undertake whatever he should think proper; that he should espouse *Eleanor* of *Austria*, the emperor's sister, whose dowry should be the two *Burgundies*; and that, on the day of his marriage, he should be created and declared king of *Burgundy*.

Q. Did not *Francis* endeavour to seize the constable?

A. He sent persons after him, but in vain; for the constable, walking a-cross the country, and ordering his horses to go through ways contrary to those which he took, escaped, and arrived safely in *Burgundy*, from whence he went into *Italy*.

Q. What steps did the king take after his retreat?

A. He contented himself with sending his troops into *Italy*, under the command of the admiral *de Bonivet*, who was very unqualified for such a trust: nevertheless, though all *Italy* was leagued against *France*, they were not strong enough, when united, to resist the *French* forces; so that they were obliged to abandon all the places in the *Milanese*, except *Milan*, *Cremona*, and *Pavia*: in all which places, the admiral placed garrisons, whereby he greatly diminished his forces.

Q. What

Q. What did *Bonivet* perform after this success?

A. He besieged *Milan*; before which place, having lost a great number of men, he was at last obliged to raise the siege; and, to complete his misfortunes, the plague broke out in the *French* camp; in consequence whereof, the enemy regained most of the places which had been abandoned.

Q. What resolution did *Bonivet* take, under this distress?

A. Instead of prudently preserving the remainder of his forces, he resolved to expose them to the event of a battle. Accordingly, he marched against the enemy, believing that he should be joined by the way by five thousand *Switzers*; but, being disappointed, and not being strong enough to engage alone, he ordered his army to face about.

Q. Did not the enemy take advantage of their retreat?

A. The imperialists, perceiving their intention, attacked them; when *Bonivet*, on their first discharge, was shot in the arm, and obliged to retire; leaving the command to the chevalier *Bayard*, who saved the *French* army, but was himself killed in the engagement.

Q. Were the *French* forces able to face the enemy after this defeat?

A. No: they abandoned the *Milanese*, and retired into *France*?

Q. Who had the command of the allied army, at this time?

A. The duke of *Bourbon*, and *Charles de Lanoy*, late viceroy of *Naples*; for whose assistance the emperor caused an army of thirty thousand men to enter *Guienne*.

Q. Who was governor of this province?

A. *Lautrec*, who had only time to throw himself into *Bayonne*, where he sustained the efforts of the assailants with incredible valour, and at last obliged them to raise the siege.

Q. What rout did the duke of *Bourbon* take after this repulse ?

A. He marched to *Fonterabia*, and took it. In the year following, which was 1524, the duke, having the sole command of the imperial army, entered *Provence*, and besieged *Marseilles*; but, an entire confidence not being reposed in him, the emperor fixed on this place alone for himself to besiege.

Q. Did the emperor make himself master of this city ?

A. The vigorous resistance made by the besieged gave the king time to come to its assistance, with an army of fifty thousand men : but the duke would not wait his coming, and raised the siege with great precipitation.

Q. Did the king pursue the flying enemy ?

A. He followed him into the *Milaneze* ; and, the city of *Milan* surrendering upon his approach, he besieged *Pavia*.

Q. Where was the duke of *Bourbon*, during these transactions ?

A. He repaired to the duke of *Savoy*, engaged him in the emperor's interest, and even got all his jewels from him ; upon which he raised vast sums, and returned into *Germany*, employing the money in raising sixteen thousand *Germans*, which he caused to march into the *Milaneze* ; and, having joined *Lanoy*, advanced with him towards *Pavia*.

Q. What was the design of this march ?

A. To throw some forces into *Pavia*, and to give the king battle, in case a favourable opportunity

portunity offered. A battle ensued, on the twenty-fourth of *February*, 1525, in which the *French* were defeated, principally by the conduct of the duke of *Bourbon*, and the courage of the troops under his command. The king, having his horse killed under him, found himself on all sides surrounded by the enemy, and at last surrendered to *Lanoy*.

Q. What officers of distinction were killed, and taken prisoners, in this battle?

A. Almost all the nobility of *France*. Among the slain, were *Francis* of *Lorraine*, father of the duke of *Lorraine*, *Lewis de la Tremouille*, *Galeas de St. Severin*, the marshal *Chabanes*, and the admiral *de Bonivet*. Among the prisoners, were the king of *France*, *Henry d'Albert* king of *Navarre*, the count *de St. Paul*, and many others too tedious to mention.

Q. To what place did they take the king of *France*?

A. He was first conducted into the enemy's camp, where three slight wounds he had received were dressed. At supper, the viceroy of *Naples* gave him water to wash, and the duke of *Bourbon* on his knee presented him the napkin. The next day, the viceroy conducted him to the castle of *Pisighitone*, a place of great strength, where he remained for some time under the care of *Alarçon*, a *Spanish* gentleman, who treated him with the highest respect.

Q. Did not the news of the defeat, and taking of the king, cause an universal consternation throughout *France*?

A. The dutchess of *Angoulême*, and queen regent of the kingdom, was not discouraged at it; but sent the gallies of *France* to *Naples*, to bring all the *French* forces home. She sent ambassa-

dors into *England*, who prevailed with *Henry VIII.* to employ his forces in the deliverance of the king, and defence of his kingdom. In the mean time, the king was sent to *Madrid*, where the treaty for his deliverance was at last signed on the fourteenth of *February*, 1526. But, a few days after *Francis* arrived on the frontiers of his own kingdom, he told the ambassadors who accompanied him, “ that as to the ratification of the “ treaty, it was what the emperor must not expect ; it being void ; because, when he signed “ it, he was not free, but a prisoner.”

Q. Were not the ambassadors surprized at the king's declaration ?

A. Much more so, on being told, in all the towns through which they passed, that an offensive and defensive alliance, between *Clement VII.* *France*, *England*, the *Venetians*, the *Switzers*, and the *Florentines*, called the holy league, had been entered into ; the design of which was to drive the foreigners out of *Italy*, and put the whole dutchy of *Milan* in possession of *Sforza*.

Q. How did the king first apply himself on his arrival at *Paris* ?

A. He gave the post of grand master of his household, vacant by the death of the bastard of *Savoy*, to the marshal *Montmorency* ; and that of admiral, vacant by the death of *Bonivet*, to the signior *de Biron* ; quitting the conduct of affairs entirely to their care.

Q. How was the war in *Italy* conducted ?

A. *Andrew Doria*, who commanded the gallies of *France*, besieged and took *Genoa*, subjecting it to *France*, in 1528, while *Lautrec* carried on the war successfully in the *Milanese* ; and, on his entering the kingdom of *Naples*, all the towns sur-
ren-

rendered to him, except the capital, to which he laid siege.

Q. Did *Lautrec* make himself master of the city of *Naples*?

A. Having received no part of what the king by his treaty with the confederates was obliged to furnish, and well knowing that *Francis* was at the same time at vast expences in his buildings and diversions, he expostulated with the king very freely thereon; who, wearied with his complaints, at last sent the prince of *Navarre* with some troops, and a small sum of money: but when the prince arrived in the camp, he, and all his men, were seized and died of the plague; as were also three fourths of *Lautrec's* army, and he himself died in six weeks after. Thus perished the *French* army, with its general, from not being supplied with men and money; whereby the siege of *Naples* was raised.

Q. What was the consequence of these calamities?

A. The length of the siege of *Naples* gave the *Spaniards* an opportunity of recovering the dutchy of *Milan*; and enabled *Andrew Doria* to make himself master of *Genoa*, who drove out the *French*, and restored their ancient form of republican government.

Q. What was doing in *France* while these affairs passed in *Italy*?

A. The dutchess of *Angouleme*, the king's mother, and *Margaret* of *Austria*, the emperor's aunt, repaired to *Cambray*, to treat about peace; which was at last concluded.

Q. What were the conditions of this treaty?

A. That the king of *France* should pay the emperor two millions in gold for his ransom; that he should relinquish the sovereignty of *Flanders* and *Artois*, and renounce his pretensions to

the dutchy of *Milan* and the kingdom of *Naples*; that he should espouse *Eleanor* the emperor's sister; and, in case a male child should be born of this marriage, he should have the dutchy of *Burgundy*; that the decrees against the duke of *Bourbon* should be void, his honours restored, and his possessions secured to him and his heirs; and, lastly, that *Philibert de Chalons* should be restored to the principality of *Orange*, with the title of sovereign: which treaty was signed at *Cambray*, in *August*, 1529.

Q. Did queen *Eleanor* quit *Spain*, after the ratification of this treaty?

A. Yes: and the king went and received her at *Bordeaux*, where he caused her to be crowned; after which, she made her public entry into *Paris*, with great magnificence, in 1530.

Q. Was *Francis* engaged in any wars after his marriage with *Eleanor*?

A. He resolved to turn his arms against the duke of *Savoy*, who had refused him a passage through his territories into the *Milanese*, and also withheld certain towns which of right belonged to his mother the dutchess of *Angouleme*: the king, therefore, sent the count *de St. Paul* into *Savoy*, with forces sufficient to make himself master of that dutchy, who effected it, before the duke began to put himself upon the defensive, in 1536.

Q. Did not the emperor send forces to succour the duke of *Savoy*?

A. Yes: which was the occasion of a war between him and *France*; and the emperor, having left forces to continue the siege of *Turin*, entered *Provence*, at the head of fifty thousand men.

Q. Werenot the *French* forces sent to oppose him?

A. The king resolved only to act upon the defensive, and gave the general command of his army

my to *Montmorency*: affairs being in this situation, when *Francis*, dauphin of *Viennois*, the king's eldest son, died at *Tournon*.

Q. How did the emperor proceed in this expedition?

A. Dividing his troops into two parts, he besieged *Marseilles* himself; and ordered the marquis *du Guesst* to besiege *Arles*.

Q. What success had the emperor in these two sieges?

A. By the vigilance and good conduct of general *Montmorency*, the emperor was obliged to raise the siege of *Marseilles*; while *Guesst* was compelled to retire from before *Arles*, at the end of a month, and retake the road to *Italy*: the sieges of *Turin* and *Peronne* being also raised at the same time.

Q. What rout did the emperor take, after this complication of misfortunes?

A. He went to *Aix*, where he reviewed his forces; and, to his great mortification, found they were reduced to twenty-three thousand men: whereupon, the king immediately assembled the court of parliament, the princes of the blood, with the peers and prelates of the kingdom; and, in presence of this assembly, in which the emperor was declared guilty, and convicted of rebellion and felony; when the earldoms of *Flanders*, *Artois*, and *Charolois* were confiscated, and united to the crown, by decree of parliament.

Q. How did the emperor behave on this severe sentence.

A. A war broke out with great violence on the side of *Artois* and *Picardy*. The king took *Hesdin*, and several other places; while the emperor, among other places, took *Montreuil*. It is to be remarked, that *Henry*, dauphin of *France*,
made:

made his first campaign in this war under marshal *Montmorency*.

Q. Did not *du Gues* retake several places in *Piedmont*?

A. Yes: whereupon the king repaired thither immediately, and regained all the places he had lost; soon after which, the marquisate of *Saluces* was united to the crown: this expedition being made in 1538.

Q. Was not the emperor desirous of an accommodation, after all these disappointments?

A. In *January* 1540, the king having met him at *Chatelleraut*, went with him from thence to *Fontainbleau*; and from thence to *Paris*, where the emperor made his entrance with great magnificence: but, notwithstanding these civilities, the emperor so ill observed the truce agreed upon, and which was religiously observed by *France*, that the king sent an army into *Roussillon*, commanded by the dauphin; and another into *Luxembourg*, under the command of his second son the duke of *Orleans*.

Q. What success had these two royal generals?

A. The duke of *Orleans* took *Luxembourg*, *Montmedy*, and several other places; but the dauphin was obliged to raise the siege of *Perpignan*, after losing a great number of men before it.

Q. What success had the emperor in the *Low Countries*?

A. After having lost a great number of places, in the year 1541, and the two following years, he at last laid siege to *Landrecis* in person, with an army of fifty-three thousand men; but, the king coming to its relief, he was obliged to raise the siege, and retire to *Cambray*.

Q. Who was governor of *Piedmont* at this time?

A. The

A. The signior *de Langey* being dead, the king gave it to the duke *d'Anguien*, a young prince of the house of *Bourbon*. In the mean time *Barbarossa*, the *Turkish* admiral, with orders from the grand signior, debarked his troops, and joined the duke ; who afterwards besieged *Nice*, which surrendered upon articles.

Q. What were the imperial generals doing, during this siege ?

A. The marquis *du Guast* took *Montdevin* in *Piedmont* ; the garrison being composed of *Switzers*, who quitted the place by capitulation ; nevertheless, the *Spaniards* killed and plundered some of them : but the *Switzers* were revenged for this perfidy at the battle of *Cerizalis*, wherein the duke of *Anguien* defeated the marquis *du Guast*, killed fifteen thousand of the enemy, and took two thousand prisoners, in 1544.

Q. How long did *Francis I.* live after this victory ?

A. Not three years ; for, being taken with a slow fever, he died, the twentieth of *March*, 1547, aged fifty eight.

Q. What was his character ?

A. This prince surpassed all his predecessors in splendor and magnificence. He either built, or repaired, all the royal palaces in *France* ; and all the most rare and valuable pictures, tapestries, jewels, and other rich furniture which are in them, were collected by *Francis I.* He established professors of the *Greek*, *Latin*, and *Hebrew* languages in *Paris*. He encouraged men of genius in all arts and sciences. In short, the revival of letters in *France*, which had been in a manner extinguished for several ages, was owing to him, and he was therefore called the *father of letters*.

HENRY II.

Q. BY whom was *Francis I.* succeeded?

A. By *Henry II.* who recalled *Montmorency*, from the disgrace he had suffered under *Francis I.* and gave him the first rank in the administration; *Francis de Lorraine*, count de *Aumale*, son of the duke de *Guise*, his brother *Charles*, archbishop of *Rheims*, and *James de Albon*, Senior de *St. Andrew*, being those principally concerned after him. But *Henry* disgraced the cardinal de *Tournon*, and the admiral *Annebaut*; the latter of whom was divested of the dignity of marshal of *France*, which was given to *St. Andrew*: however, *Henry*, upon this occasion, acted contrary to the advice which the king his father had given him at his death; for he had warned him to be upon his guard against the ambition of those of the house of *Guise*, and always to keep them out of the administration of affairs.

Q. How many marshals were there at that time?

A. Only four; and none received the honour but by some of these four becoming vacant, either by death, dismissal, or otherwise.

Q. Where was *Henry II.* crowned?

A. At *Rheims*, six months after the death of his father.

Q. What was the first enterprize, in which this prince engaged?

A. Being dissatisfied with the treaty of *Cressy*, he entered into a league with the pope against the emperor and, in 1548, passed the *Alps*, into *Piedmont*. with design to seize the duchy of *Milan*; but,

but, the success not proving answerable to the project which he had formed, he returned into *France* again, without having done any thing more than visited the towns in *Piedmont*.

Q. Were there no domestick troubles during this expedition?

A. The ambitious and turbulent spirit of the dutchess *de la Valentinois*, who was the king's favourite mistress, caused great changes at court; for, as her power over the king was absolute, she filled the chief places in the administration with those who were entirely at her devotion.

Q. How did *Henry* and the pope agree?

A. The king being greatly dissatisfied with him, because he had joined with the emperor to force *Octavius Farnese* out of the dutchy of *Parma*, he sent *Peter Strozzi* to defend that city; who succeeded so happily, that the marquis *de Gonsago*, who besieged it, was obliged to raise the siege.

Q. Did not this occasion a rupture between *Henry* and the emperor?

A. In 1552, a war broke out between him and the emperor: but the protestant princes, taking advantage of this conjuncture, entered into a confederacy against the latter, and implored the assistance of *Henry*.

Q. Who were the chief in these confederates?

A. *Maurice*, elector of *Saxony*, and *Albert*, marquis of *Brandenbourg*; who took several towns, gained a battle against the emperor, and obliged him shamefully to fly to *Inspruck*. The king soon after entered *Germany*, where he took *Savanna* and *Weissembourg*; when the emperor offered peace to the confederates, who gave ear to his proposals.

Q. Was

Q. Was not the king enraged at the confederate princes, on this occasion ?

A. He stifled his resentment ; but, at the same time, entered *Luxembourg*, where he immediately made himself master of some important places, and afterwards took *Ivoy* and *Montmedy*, in 1552 : during which time he received some injuries in *Picardy* and *Champaigne* ; though they were nothing in comparison of what the king gained in this campaign, which he ended with the conquest of the dutchy of *Bouillon*.

Q. How did *Henry's* affairs go on in *Italy*, during his war with the emperor ?

A. Very well ; but those of the emperor were in confusion : for the marshal *Brissac* had forced the *Spaniards* to quit all the towns in *Piedmont* ; and the *Siennese*, being succoured by him, had driven them out of the city, and set the republic at liberty. About the same time, the duke of *Guise* sent the king word, that, if his majesty pleased, he might employ his forces in retaking *Hesdin*, while the emperor, to no purpose, was fatiguing and ruining his army before *Metz*, which siege he was obliged to raise, after the loss of thirty thousand men ; while the *French* over-ran *Flanders*.

Q. What success had *Peter Strozzi*, the king's general in *Italy* ?

A. After several rencounters, wherein he had always the advantage, he was at last defeated and wounded, with the loss of three thousand men.

Q. Is there any thing remarkable of this engagement ?

A. The place where it was fought was called *Gallicidio* ; the evil portent of which name, ought to have forewarned the *French* of their defeat.

Q. What

Q. What was the consequence of *Strozzi's* defeat?

A. The *Siannese*, being destitute of succour, and provisions at last absolutely failing, were obliged, after fifteen months siege, to surrender in August 1555.

Q. What were the other memorable exploits of *Henry II.*

A. He sent an army into *Italy*, commanded by the duke of *Guise*, against the *Spaniards* commanded by the duke of *Alba*; but the *French* were unsuccessful, which gave the *Spaniards* an opportunity of penetrating into *Picardy*, where they obtained a victory over the constable of *France*: however, the king, in 1558, took *Calais* from the *English*, of which they had been possessed two hundred and ten years: when his majesty took this opportunity of the public rejoicing for his successes, to conclude the marriage of *Francis*, dauphin of *France*, with *Mary Stuart*, queen of *Scotland*; after which, this prince was called the *dauphin king*, and *Mary* the *dauphin queen*.

Q. Did not the king, after these successes, penetrate into *Flanders*?

A. He sent the marshal *de Termes* thither with five thousand men, assuring him, that he should be supported by the duke of *Guise*: in confidence of receiving this promised succour, he entered the country; but, finding the duke did not appear at the time appointed, he began to think of retreating.

Q. How did he succeed in this retreat?

A. The count *d'Egmont* attacked him near *Gravelines* with ten thousand men, defeated him, and took him prisoner.

Q. What

Q. What became of his army after he was made prisoner ?

A. Very few escaped ; for those who fled from the field were slain by the peasants.

Q. Was not this misfortune attended with proposals for a peace ?

A. It determined the king to consent to a treaty, very disadvantageous to *France*, which was concluded in *February*, 1559, at the castle of *Cambray*. The principal articles were, that the king of *Spain* should restore all that he had taken in *Picardy* ; that *Henry* should surrender *Savoy* and *Piedmont*, to the duke of *Savoy*, except the cities of *Turin* and *Pignorol* ; and that he should give that duke his sister *Margaret* in marriage, and abandon all places he possessed in *Italy* and *Corfica*.

Q. How long did *Henry* live after the peace was concluded ?

A. Great preparations were making at court to celebrate the marriage of *Margaret* ; for which purpose the king ordered a tournament, wherein he resolved to break a lance against the count *de Montgomery* ; accordingly, they ran against each other, and broke their lances ; but a splinter of *Montgomery's*, penetrating the vizor of the king's helmet, passed through his eye into his head, of which wound, the king died ten days after, in the fortieth year of his age : when some people remarked, that divine justice required, that he, who began his reign by permitting a duel, contrary to his conscience, between two principal gentlemen of his court, should lose his life by a duel.

Q. What issue had *Henry II* ?

A. He left four sons ; *Francis*, *Charles*, *Alexander*, and *Hercules* ; but the names of the two last were afterwards changed, into those of *Henry*, and

and *Francis*. He also left three daughters; *Elizabeth* queen of *Spain*; *Claudia*, dutchess of *Lorraine*; and *Margaret*, who was first queen of *Navarre*, and afterwards of *France*.

FRANCIS II.

Q. WHO succeeded *Henry II*?

A. His eldest son *Francis II*. who was sixteen years and some months old; but declared a minor, notwithstanding the declaration of the preceding kings.

Q. What alterations did he make in the ministry?

A. The constable *Montmorency*, and all those who had any connection with him, were obliged to retire from court; the young king having made choice of the duke of *Guise*, and the cardinal *de Lorraine*, to conduct the affairs of state; to the first of whom he gave the management of the war, to the other that of the finances.

Q. In what manner did these two new ministers behave themselves?

A. Every body was dissatisfied with their government; and, at the beginning of the year 1560, the celebrated conspiracy of *Amboise*, against the princes of the house of *Guise*, was formed.

Q. Who were the authors of this conspiracy?

A. They are not known; but they were principally protestants; the prince of *Conde*, brother to the king of *Navarre*, being chosen for their chief, though his name did not appear; he having reserved himself, for an open declaration, till those who conducted the enterprize, should have brought it to a fair probability of success.

Q. What

Q. What was the intent of the conspirators?

A. To make themselves masters of the town and castle of *Amboise*, where the king was; to seize the *Lorrain* princes, and to kill them.

Q. Was not this affair discovered to the king?

A. Yes; whereupon his majesty, by letters patent, gave the government of the kingdom, and the sovereign command of his armies, to the duke of *Guise*; in order to prevent the impending mischief, in such manner as he should think proper.

Q. What success had the duke in this attempt?

A. The conspiracy being discovered, by one *Avenelle*, the duke sent troops to all parts against the conspirators; who, in separate bodies were marching towards *Amboise* from several parts of the kingdom: so that their leader, *la Renaudie*, was met and killed; very few of his followers escaped; being either slain, drowned, or executed.

Q. How did the prince of *Conde* justify himself on this occasion?

A. With great eloquence and firmness, in presence of the king; the duke of *Guise*, with wonderful dissimulation, declaring the prince innocent. However, he reposed no confidence in the duke's friendship; but retired from court, and went into *Guienne*, with the three *Coligny's*, and several other great officers of *France*; though, at the same time, he was in danger of losing his life, but escaped as well as his brother, the king of *Navarre*; however, the former was afterwards imprisoned, and condemned to die, for being concerned in the conspiracy of *Amboise*; and the latter was in danger of being assassinated in the royal presence.

Q. How

Q. How long did *Francis II.* live?

A. The very evening that the decree was made for the execution of the prince of *Conde*, the king fell sick, and died ten days after, aged eighteen; being interred at *St. Dennis*, almost entirely without ceremony, and without issue.

Q. What was his character?

A. That he was feeble both in body and mind; being furnished, by the queen his mother, with all kinds of diversion, to prevent him from turning his thoughts upon government; which conduct she afterwards pursued to *Charles IX.* so that the queen-mother, and the duke of *Guise*, governed all things at their pleasure, under his name and authority.

CHARLES IX.

Q. WHO ascended the throne of *France*, after the death of *Henry II.*?

A. His brother *Charles*, about twelve years old; who released the prince of *Conde*.

Q. In whose hands was the government of the kingdom reposed, during the minority of *Charles*?

A. In the king of *Navarre*, by the unanimous consent of all the great officers; whereupon he took the title of regent: but, the queen-mother being unwilling to relinquish it, they came to a new agreement, whereby the prince was to have the title of viceroy, and the queen that of regent.

Q. What was the first memorable action of *Charles*?

A. In 1561, he, by letters patent, declared, that he was satisfied with regard to the innocence of the prince of *Conde*.

Q. How

Q. How did *Catherine de Medicis*, the king's mother, support her dominion?

A. She sacrificed the repose of the state, the honour and authority of her children, whom she abandoned in their infancy to a voluptuous life, to estrange them from the knowledge of affairs, to her ambition.

Q. Were there not at this time in *France*, continual disputes about the affairs of religion?

A. Though the king had, by an edict, ordered the catholicks and protestants to live in peace with each other; nevertheless, the discord continued in the provinces, and was much more violent at *Paris*: both parties beginning to call each other by the invidious names of papists and hugonot.

Q. What was the origin of the word *hugonot*?

A. It is not certainly known; some believe, it took its rise from certain deputies of the protestants coming to harangue the king in *Latin*; when he who was to speak, stopped short at the beginning of what he should have said, and having repeated the words, *huc nos, huc venimus*, could proceed no farther: though others are of opinion, that this name was given them at *Tours*, because they assembled in the night to teach in a part of the town, where superstitious people believed the apparition of king *Hugo* appeared every night.

Q. How was the state governed at this time?

A. The duke of *Guise*, the constable of *Montmorency*, and the marshal *de St. Andrew*, being strictly united, absolutely governed the kingdom under the queen, and the king of *Navarre*; their union being called the *Triumvirate*.

Q. Did not their government occasion discontent,

tent, on account of their ill treatment of the protestants?

A. The prince of *Conde* first appeared in arms against them, and took *Orleans*, in 1562. At the same time, he published a manifesto, wherein he declared, that he took up arms for the liberty of the king, whom they kept in captivity, and for their consciences who had embraced the reformed religion.

Q. What further conquests did the protestants make?

A. The taking of *Orleans* was followed by that of *Roan*, *Dieppe*, *Mons*, *Tours*, *Angers*, *Lyons*, and several others; all which were taken without effusion of blood.

Q. Did not *Elizabeth*, at this time, queen of *England*, interest herself in the cause of the protestants?

A. She sent them six thousand *English*, upon condition three thousand of them should be placed in *Havre de Grace*; the other three thousand being placed in *Roan*, of which city the count *de Montgomery* was governor.

Q. Were not the protestant forces opposed by the *Triumvirate*?

A. Soon after the *English* troops arrived, the king of *Navarre* laid siege to *Roan*, which he took by assault. However, *Montgomery*, with the *English*, found means to escape to *Havre de Grace*.

Q. Where was the prince of *Conde* at this time?

A. He approached *Paris* at the head of his troops; and *Coligny*, who commanded the vanguard, attacked the suburbs of *St. Victor*.

Q. Were not the *Parisians* greatly terrified on this occasion?

A. The

A. The first president, *Giles de Maitre*, died of the very fright ; but the militia in the suburbs, not being seized with such a panick, obliged the enemy to retire : who took the road to *Normandy* ; but were pursued by *Montmorency*, who, coming up with them near *Dreux*, gave them battle.

Q. What was the fortune of this engagement ?

A. It was very uncommon ; for the generals of both parties were taken prisoners : the constable *Montmorency* being carried to *Orleans* ; and the prince of *Conde* to the camp of the king's troops.

Q. How was the prince received by the enemy ?

A. With the greatest respect ; for the duke of *Guise* served him at supper ; and, the baggage not being arrived that evening, he was the only person who had a bed, which he offered to the prince of *Conde*, who accepted it only on condition the duke should lie with him. Thus fortune brought together, at the same table, and in the same bed, two mortal enemies, who had been long seeking each others ruin.

Q. Who commanded the two armies, after the two generals were taken prisoners ?

A. The command of the king's army was given to the duke of *Guise*, and the protestants chose *Coligny* for their general. The former was immediately sent to besiege *Orleans* ; which the latter quitted, having very well supplied it with every thing necessary to maintain a siege, to take the field and raise forces.

Q. Was there any thing remarkable happened during this siege ?

A. The duke of *Guise*, upon his return to his tent from visiting the works, and coming through an obscure place, received a mortal wound from a pistol,

pistol, which *Peltrot*, a protestant gentleman, fired at him; of which wound he died six days after.

Q. Was not the situation of affairs altered by the death of this general?

A. After several conferences, the queen came to an agreement with the prince of *Conde*, and a peace was concluded; whereby the protestants were granted the liberty of assembling publicly for the exercise of their religion.

Q. What was done after the peace was concluded?

A. The *English* refusing to quit *Havre de Grace*, the king declared war against queen *Elizabeth*; when the constable besieged that place, and took it.

Q. What other remarkable occurrences happened?

A. The year 1564 is memorable for the king's edict, directing the year to begin for the future from the first day of *January*; whereas, before, it had always commenced at *Easter*.

Q. How stood the affairs of the protestants at this time?

A. The pope having engaged *Philip* of *Spain* against them, this prince contented himself with sending the queen his wife, who was the sister of *Charles IX.* into *France*, accompanied by the duke of *Alba*, and some other ministers, to consult measures for their ruin.

Q. Were not the protestants alarmed at these conferences between the king and the ministers of *Spain*?

A. Being informed that measures were concerting for their destruction, the protestants took arms, and assembled in all places; so that the king upon his return from *Bayonne*, where the conferences were held, to *Paris*, found himself

in danger of being invested by the prince of *Conde*, who had followed him with several squadrons of cavalry.

Q. How did *Charles* escape this danger ?

A. The constable, fearing that the prince of *Conde* had a design to make himself master of his person, ordered the battalions, that escorted him, to halt ; while the king, attended only by a few gentlemen, proceeded to *Paris*, with all possible expedition.

Q. Was not this design of *Conde* looked upon as an open declaration of war ?

A. Yes ; and *la Noue*, one of the chiefs of the protestants, soon after made himself master of the city of *Orleans*, where they principally transacted their affairs ; after which, great numbers of the most considerable persons in the kingdom joined the prince of *Conde*.

Q. Where did he assemble his forces ?

A. Near *Paris* ; and, having taken up his quarters in the towns and villages about that city, the inhabitants were soon reduced to great extremity for want of provisions ; which caused the people to murmur against the constable ; who, as soon as he had received proper succours, gave them battle.

Q. What was the event of this engagement ?

A. *Coligny*, who commanded the left wing of the protestant army, was defeated : while, on the other side, the constable was defeated by the prince of *Conde*, and killed : but the protestants, being no longer able to dispute the victory, retired in good order ; leaving the catholicks masters of the field.

Q. Was the war continued in any other provinces ?

A. Yes ; throughout the whole kingdom, with

as much violence as about *Paris* ; *Rochelle* having put itself under the protection of the prince of *Conde*, and the inhabitants offered their lives and fortunes in the cause of religion ; which promise they religiously observed ; this city being always a retreat for the protestants till 1628, when it was besieged, and taken by *Lewis XIII.*

Q. Did the protestant army receive no reinforcements ?

A. *Casimir*, son of the elector *Palatine*, came to their assistance, with a considerable body of *Germans* : but, soon after, a peace was concluded, contrary to the opinion of the admiral *Coligny* ; who, by a singular sagacity, penetrated the designs of the queen.

Q. What were the conditions of this treaty ?

A. That the *German* troops should be sent home ; those of the prince of *Conde* disbanded ; and the towns which they had taken given up to the king ; which was done, in *March 1568.*

Q. Was the persecution of the protestants continued after this peace ?

A. They now found the accomplishment of what had been foretold by the admiral *de Coligny* ; namely, that peace had been offered, only to disarm them, and thereby destroy them with greater ease : for, immediately after, queen *Catherine* made preparations for war against them.

Q. Did not the protestants perceive the design formed against them ?

A. They, being informed of it, refused to surrender the towns of *Montaubon* and *Rochelle*, which were still in their possession : but, at the same time, the king published an edict, whereby he forbade all his subjects, on pain of death, to profess any other religion than the catholic.

Q. How did the protestants behave on this occasion ?

K 2

A. They

A. They openly took arms, and soon made themselves masters of *Saintonge*, *Angoumois*, with the greatest part of *Poitou* ; while the queen of *Navarre*, who was in distress at *Rochelle*, with the prince her son, sent to *Elizabeth*, queen of *England*, for assistance.

Q. Did this princess comply with her request ?

A. She instantly sent her a considerable sum of money, some troops, and six pieces of cannon.

Q. How did the war in *France*, between the two parties, succeed after this ?

A. The duke of *Anjou* marched against the protestants, with twenty thousand men ; and the prince of *Conde*, at the head of eighteen thousand, advanced to meet him ; when a battle ensued ; wherein the prince of *Conde* was killed, in 1569.

Q. Was not the protestant interest entirely ruined by this defeat ?

A. Every body was of this opinion ; but, contrary to the notions of all the world, their forces were soon re-established, through the care and prudence of the admiral, by *Henry de Bourbon*, son of the queen of *Navarre*, and *Henry* son of the late prince of *Conde* : besides these, the protestant princes of *Germany*, and the protestants of *France*, sent them a re-inforcement of eight thousand horse, commanded by the duke *Deux Ponts* : the prince of *Orange* also, with his two brothers, *Henry* and *Lewis* of *Nassau*, entered *France* with his forces, advanced into the heart of *Guyenne*, and joined the admiral *Coligny*.

Q. What rout did *Coligny* take, after this junction ?

A. He marched to besiege *Poitiers* : but, contrary to his expectation, the town held out for a month ; when the duke of *Anjou* came to their relief, and *Coligny* retired.

Q. Did

Q. Did the duke pursue him ?

A. Yes ; and attacked the protestants near *Montoncour*, where they were defeated ; which battle was fought on the third of *October* 1569 : wherein four thousand *Germans*, and about the same number of *French*, were slain.

Q. In what manner did *Coligny* retrieve this loss ?

A. With such expedition and vigour in the renewal of his forces, that they were able to carry the war even to the gates of *Paris* ; and at length obliged the king to grant them a peace.

Q. What was the consequence of this peace ?

A. *Coligny* was invited to the court of *France*, with many fair promises ; and *Nassau*, not apprized of the king's intentions, persuaded him to go, though he himself was diffident about it.

Q. What usage did he meet with from the king ?

A. His majesty received him with joy and amity, embraced him, called him father, gave him one hundred thousand franks, and granted him the revenues of the benefices of his brother the cardinal of *Chatillon*.

Q. Was not the admiral apprehensive of the king's dissimulation ?

A. No ; both he, the king of *Navarre*, the prince of *Conde*, and all the protestants, were infatuated with *French perfidy* : for, soon after, as he was going on foot from the *Louvre* to his lodgings, a musket was fired at him from the window of a house, and he was wounded with two balls, one of which pierced his arm, and the other his right hand ; but neither of them mortal.

Q. Did the king seem concerned at this action ?

A. He swore, that he would punish the author and accomplices so rigorously, that it should shew

the injury done to himself : nay, even he and the queen his mother, went to see *Coligny*, and expressed their mutual concern.

Q. On what account were these compliments paid ?

A. They were offered meerly to put in execution the grand design which had been concerted, for the destruction of the protestants : accordingly, *Coligny* was assassinated that very night, and the example was followed in all the towns throughout the kingdom.

Q. What became of the king of *Navarre*, and the duke of *Conde*, during this horrid massacre ?

A. *Charles*, first sent for them into his cabinet ; then caused them to be confined in the *Louvre* ; having told them, at the same time, that, if they did not embrace the catholick religion, they must prepare to suffer the same fate as their friend *Coligny* had experienced.

Q. What did these two great men reply ?

A. The king of *Navarre* said, he was willing to obey his majesty in all things ; but the prince of *Conde* reproached him with breach of faith ; alledging, that he would rather suffer death, than change his religion. The king incensed, at this reply, called him rebel, and declared, “ that, if within three days, he did not alter his resolution, he should certainly die.”

Q. How long did the slaughter of the protestants continue in *Paris* ?

A. Three days ; during which time eight thousand protestants were massacred in *Paris* only.

Q. Was this detestable massacre put in practice throughout the whole kingdom ?

A. *Dauphine*, *Provence*, and *Avergne*, were the
the

the only places exempted from this inhumanity. Nay, all the *Europeans* looked upon this action with the utmost abhorrence ; saying, that, in the accounts of the most barbarous nations, there was not an example of such horrid cruelty.

Q. To what place did the protestants of the kingdom retire for shelter ?

A. To *Rochelle* ; and with full resolution to defend themselves : but, the king immediately besieging it, the governor of this city, named *Lanoue*, retreated. After he abandoned them, the citizens were so much irritated, that even the women were competitors with the men in valour, having fought with them in several assaults ; and, the assailants being continually repulsed by the courage of the protestants, the king offered them terms of peace ; which was concluded on the sixth of *July* 1573. Thus ended the war against the protestants.

Q. Whither did *Biron*, who commanded the king's forces before *Rochelle*, and the duke of *Anjou*, who came to his assistance, retire, after the peace ?

A. The duke of *Anjou* soon after was elected king of *Poland* : but, being little affected with the honours of royalty, he was with difficulty prevailed on to leave *France* ; when the king accompanied him as far as *Chalons* ; where, being taken ill, he was obliged to stop.

Q. How long did *Charles* live after this attack ?

A. He died soon after, on the feast of *Pentecost*, in the year 1574, and in the twenty fifth year of his age ; having suffered great pains ; and, his body being opened, several marks of poison appeared.

Q. Did this young prince leave any issue ?

A. He left by the queen his wife one daughter, who died soon after him ; and one natural son, named *Charles* count *d' Auvergne*.

Q. What character have historians given of *Charles IX*.

A. That he was a prince of great wit and courage ; but he had been spoiled by bad education : the queen his mother, having accustomed him to blood from his youth ; though he was naturally choleric, and frequently uttered the most horrid imprecations.

H E N R Y I I I .

Q. W H O succeeded *Charles IX* ?

A. *Henry*, king of *Poland*, and duke of *Anjou* ; to whom the crown descended by right of succession.

Q. In what manner did he govern the kingdom ?

A. Nothing could be more different than the two parts of the life of this prince : nothing more glorious than his conduct when duke of *Anjou*, and commanding the forces of the king his brother : nothing more despicable, or unworthy of the royal dignity, than his behaviour when on the throne.

Q. Were the *Poles* willing to let him go into *France* ?

A. They resolved to prevent his departure ; but were disappointed in the design : for *Henry* went suddenly away, to the confines of *Austria* ; after some time, he proceeded to *Avignon*, and from thence to *Rheims* in order for his coronation ; previous to which, he sent to demand in marriage

marriage of the duke of *Lorrain*, *Louisa*, daughter of the count *de Vaudemont*, the duke's brother ; who met him at *Rheims*, and was espoused to him the day after his coronation.

Q. Were not the *Poles* incensed at his abandoning the kingdom ?

A. They declared him divested of all right to the crown of *Poland* ; and elected for their king *Stephen Bathory*, prince of *Transilvania*.

Q. Was the war between the catholicks and protestants still continued in *France* ?

A. With great vigour ; and the prince of *Conde*, with twenty thousand men, having entered *France*, joined the duke *d'Alençon*, to whom he resigned the command : but the queen, judging the only thing to be done was to make peace with them at any rate, undertook to negotiate it herself ; and, repairing to the duke's camp, concluded a peace with him, upon terms advantageous to the confederates.

Q. Did not the enemies of the protestants resent these proceedings of the queen ?

A. The duke of *Guise*, in particular, was so highly offended at it, that he immediately commenced the fatal league which reduced the kingdom to the last extremity. A league which attacked the royal dignity more than religion.

Q. Did not the duke of *Guise* communicate an account of what was proposed to be executed by this league, to the pope, and to the king of *Spain* ?

A. He did ; which was, that, when he should be declared chief, and this dignity should have rendered him all-powerful in the kingdom, the duke *d'Alençon* might be seized, condemned, and put to death ; the king should be confined in a monastery ; and the pope should give the kingdom to the duke of *Guise*.

Q. Was not *Henry* extremely incensed at this project?

A. To humble the duke, who pretended to place himself in the rank of the princes of the blood, the king issued an edict, in 1577, whereby he declared, that all the great officers of the crown should be obliged to give place to those who had the honour of being of the royal blood; and that his intention was to establish the catholick religion throughout the kingdom; but not to use any violence.

Q. What was the consequence of this edict?

A. Soon after, the king published another at *Poitiers*; which was received with inexpressible joy, by all those who were desirous of the publick good, both catholicks and protestants; to which peace succeeded.

Q. Where was *Henry's* brother, during the time of this peace?

A. Having raised an army of eight thousand foot, and one thousand horse, he entered *Flanders*; took the states of the *Low Countries* under his protection; and, after having obliged *Alexander Farnese*, their governor for the king of *Spain*, to raise the siege of *Cambray*, was proclaimed duke of *Brabant*: but he died soon after, in *June* 1584, aged thirty one.

Q. How was the news of his death received by the duke of *Guise*?

A. It wonderfully raised the spirits of the leaguers: and, at the beginning of the year 1585, a treaty was concluded at *Joinville*, between the duke of *Guise*, the king of *Spain*, the cardinal *de Bourbon*, and the duke of *Mayenne*, to protect the league, and carry on the war against the protestants.

Q. Did the duke of *Guise* commence a fresh war

war against the protestants, after the conclusion of this treaty ?

A. Without losing time, he put himself at the head of his troops, and marched into *Champagne* ; seized, in the name of the league, upon *Metz*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*, every where exterminating the protestants : whereupon, the deputies from the states of the *Low Countries*, demanded the king's protection, and offered to acknowledge him their sovereign.

Q. Was not the king alarmed at this procedure ?

A. At the same time, a request having been presented to him, in the name of the league, signed by the cardinal *de Bourbon* and the duke of *Guise*, demanding war to be declared against the protestants ; the king answered the deputies of the *Low Countries*, " that he could not assist them at present ; but that he would desire the queen of *England* to send them succours : " and, in the mean time, the king published an edict conformable to the request of the former.

Q. Who commanded the king's army, which was sent against the protestants ?

A. The duke *de Joyeuse*, who marched against the king of *Navarre* : the two armies met near *Coutras*, and a battle ensued, wherein *Joyeuse* was defeated, and killed.

Q. Did not the *Parisians* form an enterprize against the king's person, soon after this defeat ?

A. They designed to send eight thousand men to besiege the *Louvre*, on that side next the country, and then seize upon it : but *Henry*, being informed of their intention, sent for the duke of *Guise* to prevent their putting it into execution, and fled to *Chartres* with great precipitation.

Q. How did the duke of *Guise* behave, after he was informed of the king's retreat ?

A. He

A. He seized the *Bastile*, and the castle of *St. Vincennes* : after which, the queen-mother began to negotiate a peace between him and the king ; the articles of which were agreed on in a few days. But the king, soon after perceiving there were no hopes of bringing him to obedience by the authority of the states, over whom he had greater power than himself, formed a design to have him assassinated.

Q. How were things disposed, so as the execution might succeed ?

A. The king was to be with his council early next morning ; and *Larchant*, one of the four captains of the guards *de corps*, whom the king had intrusted, meeting the duke, desired, when he should go to the council the next day, he would present a request, in the name of the king's guards, praying that what was due to them might be paid.

Q. Did the duke of *Guise* grant his request ?

A. Yes ; and with design to shew their petition first to the king, who, being informed he was in the anti-chamber, and could not escape, sent for him into his cabinet, as if to communicate to him some affair of importance ; but, as soon as the duke entered, the door was shut ; and, as he was lifting up the tapestry of the cabinet-door, where the king was, one of his nine gentlemen in ordinary, whom he had employed for the purpose, seized his sword with one hand, and with the other stabbed him in the breast, while the other eight immediately dispatched him : and, two days after, his brother, the cardinal *de Lorrain*, shared the same fate.

Q. Were not the leaguers intimidated by the death of the princes of *Guise* ?

A. No : it rather enraged them ; and *Paris* was the place where their fury displayed itself the most

most : for, on the twenty-first of *January*, the parliament being assembled, the palace was invested by the populace in arms : whereupon the king, by an edict, transferred the parliament of *Paris* to *Tours* ; to which place the duke of *Mayenne*, brother to the late duke of *Guise*, with a numerous army, followed, in hopes to surprize the king there : the attack continued for one day ; when the duke, being informed that the king of *Navarre* was marching towards him, retired with precipitation.

Q. Did *Henry* return towards *Paris*, on the king of *Navarre*'s arrival ?

A. Yes : and formed the siege of that great city.

Q. Where was *Catherine de Medicis*, queen of *France*, and mother of the three last kings, during these tumults ?

A. At *Blois*, where she died in 1589 : seeming to have been born only for the destruction of the kingdom.

Q. How was the siege of *Paris* conducted ?

A. Very successfully for the king ; when a dominican undertook to kill *Henry*, even at the expence of his own life.

Q. In what manner did he execute this horrid design ?

A. The wretch quitted *Paris* the last day of *July* ; and, being seized by the soldiers, they delivered him into the hands of the king's solicitor-general, to whom he said he was sent, by his majesty's faithful servants in *Paris*, to communicate to him some things of importance. The next morning, he was, by his majesty's order, brought before him ; and, while the king was listening to him with attention near a window, the villain stabbed him in the belly with a knife, of which he died the next morning, being

ing the second of *August*, 1589, aged thirty-nine; after having enjoined all those who were round him to obey the king of *Navarre* as their rightful heir to the crown.

HENRY IV. king of France and Navarre.

Q. WHO succeeded *Henry III*?

A. As he died without issue, and the branch of *Valois* being extinct in his person, the succession to the crown descended to *Henry de Bourbon*, king of *Navarre*, first prince of the blood, and chief of the house of *Bourbon*; which, is the third and last branch of the descendants of *St. Lewis*.

Q. Were not the leaguers divided among themselves, touching the succession of this prince to the crown of *France*?

A. They agreed, that the crown should be preserved in the house to which it belonged; but that it should be given to a catholic prince: whereupon, they chose the cardinal *de Bourbon*, whom they proclaimed king, under the name of *Charles X.* but, this prince being strictly confined at *Fontenoy* in *Poitou*, the duke de *Mayenne* had the authority of the royal dignity, and exercised it among those of his party.

Q. Did *Henry IV.* continue the siege of *Paris*, after the death of the late king?

A. No: he entered *Normandy*, with a design to make himself master of that province, and to wait for succours from the queen of *England*.

Q. Was he not pursued by the duke of *Mayenne*?

A. The duke attacked him at a village near *Dieppe*, called *Arques*; but was defeated: after which,

which, the king traversed the provinces of *Touraine*, *Maine*, and *Anjou*, where he took many towns ; and, having defeated the rebels on several occasions, obliged them to quit the field : when he returned into *Normandy*, and again defeated the duke of *Mayenne* at *Ivry*, three leagues from *Dreux*.

Q. Would not the duke of *Mayenne*, after these two defeats, acknowledge *Henry* to be king of *France*?

A. *Mayenne* sent *Vitry* to him, with a letter of credence, directed *To his majesty* ; charging him, at the same time, to tell the king, that nothing prevented the duke from acknowledging him but the difference of religion : but the king, without replying to this point, answered, “ *That, by the grace of GOD, and the force of his arms, he very well knew how to make himself acknowledged.*”

Q. Where did *Henry* carry his arms, after this message from *Mayenne*?

A. He besieged *Chartres*, which he forced to surrender on the nineteenth of *April* 1591. when whole provinces voluntarily submitted to him.

Q. Did the king, after these successes, embrace the catholic faith ?

A. He did ; having, on the fifteenth of *July*, 1593, repaired to *St. Dennis* ; where, before the archbishop of *Bourges*, and in presence of all the lords of his court, as also an infinite number of people who came from *Paris* to see the ceremony, he renounced the protestant religion.

Q. Did not his conversion produce a great effect upon the minds of his enemies ?

A. The *Parisians* declared they had now no longer reason to refuse obedience to him : but the duke of *Mayenne*, and the partizans of *Spain*, insisted, that the king could not be considered as a catholic, till the pope had declared him such, and should have granted him absolution. Q.

Q. Was *Henry IV.* crowned king of *France*, after his conversion ?

A. Yes: the ceremony being performed at *Chartres*, on the twenty-seventh of *February*, 1594; *Rheims* not being yet reduced to the king's obedience.

Q. Did the duke of *Mayenne* still keep the possession of *Paris* ?

A. He began to think himself no longer safe there, and retired to *Soissons*; while *Paris* was given up to the king, who entered it, at the head of his troops, on the twenty-second of *March* in the same year.

Q. What followed ?

A. The king caused a solemn thanksgiving to be returned to heaven for his successes, by a general procession, wherein he himself assisted; and the parliament ordered the same, to be annually performed, on the twenty-second of *March*, for ever; whereby things were restored to the same state as formerly.

Q. What measures were afterwards pursued by the king ?

A. With the advice of his council, he declared war against *Spain*: when the *Spaniards*, extremely astonished at this declaration, obliged their king to issue out a manifesto, asserting, that, in all his enterprizes, he did not make war against *France*, but against the enemies of *God* and the church.

Q. Did *Henry* make *Paris* the place of his residence ?

A. Yes: and, on the twenty-seventh of *September* following, was wounded in his chamber with a knife, in the lip, by *John Chastel*, a youth only nineteen years old, and the son of a rich merchant in that city; who, on examination asserted, that the

the *jesuits*, under whom he studied, told him, that to kill an heretical prince, or one who was not acknowledged a catholic by the pope, would be an action so agreeable to God, that it would efface the most enormous crimes.

Q. What was *Chastel's* punishment for this attempt?

A. The parliament condemned him to be torn to pieces by horses; which was executed: his father was banished, his house demolished, and the *jesuits* were ordered to quit the kingdom within fifteen days.

Q. How was the war carried on against Spain?

A. *Bretagne* was not yet subjected to *Henry*; therefore, after reducing *la Fere* and *Amiens*, he marched his troops that way; and, being resolved to subdue that province, went himself, in order to enter it: when the governor *Philip Emanuel* of *Lorraine*, duke of *Mercœur*, finding himself in danger, had recourse to submission, and articles of peace were concluded; the whole of these conditions consisting in a contract of marriage, between *César*, duke of *Vendôme*, the king's natural son, and *Frances de Lorraine*, only daughter of the duke of *Mercœur*, who was to give fifty thousand livres to his daughter as a portion, and voluntarily divest himself of the government of *Bretagne*, in favour of the duke of *Vendôme*.

Q. How did the pope relish the king's successes?

A. He exhorted both him, and the king of *Spain*, to incline to peace; wherein he had at last the satisfaction to succeed; and it was concluded, on the second of *May*, 1598, at *Paris*, wherein the duke of *Savoy* was comprehended; and it was agreed, that the pope should be the sole

sole judge of the restitution of the marquisate of *Salluccio*, which this duke had usurped from *France*.

Q. Did the duke of *Savoy* on his part execute the treaty of *Paris*?

A. No: but the king declared war against him, on the eleventh of *August* following, for the recovery of that marquisate; and deprived him of all *Savoy*; which the king afterwards restored, except the countries and lordships of *Bresse*, *Bugey*, and *Valromey*, with the bailiage of *Grex*, by the treaty of *Lyons* in 1601, where the king was come to receive *Mary de Medicis*, daughter of *Francis*, grand duke of *Tuscany*, whom he had demanded in marriage.

Q. How did *Henry IV.* employ himself in this interval, while peace and good order reigned throughout all the provinces, till 1609.

A. He re-established the *jesuits* in those places from whence they had been banished, and applied himself to cultivate the arts and sciences in his kingdom; till the death of the duke of *Cleves* occasioned a war to break out with great violence in *Germany*; where the princes confederate against the house of *Austria*, applied to the king for his assistance, who assembled one of the most formidable armies *France* ever saw, round *Chalons* in *Champaign*; and, being desirous to leave the queen regent, he caused her to be crowned at *St. Dennis* on the thirteenth of *May*; but, having made preparations for her solemn entrance on the sixteenth, and also for his departure into *Germany* the day following, he was killed, in one of the public streets, on the fourteenth of the same month, in 1609.

Q. Who committed this parricide?

A. *Francis Ravaiillac*, a practitioner of the law, who had some days lain in wait for him; and, seeing

seeing the coach stop in a narrow place, while the king looked another way, he gave him three thrusts with a knife, one of which entered the *Vena-cava*, and killed him: whereby this great king was murdered in the midst of his most faithful servants.

LEWIS XIII.

Q. WHO succeeded *Henry IV*?

A. *Lewis* his son; who, the day after the death of his father, went with the queen his mother to the parliament, then assembled at the *Augustins*; and, by the mouth of his chancellor, declared that princess regent of the kingdom, during his minority: after which, he was crowned at *Rheims*, on the 17th of *October* 1609.

Q. Had the queen any other children?

A. She had five more; two of whom were sons; and the other three daughters.

Q. What became of *Ravaillac*, the late king's murderer?

A. This wretch was brought to trial, and condemned to have his flesh torn off with red hot pincers, upon a scaffold in the square of the *Greve*; to have his right hand burnt off, and then to be torn in pieces by horses.

Q. Did the queen's regency continue peaceable?

A. Not long; for, a few years after, the prince of *Conde*, the dukes of *Longueville*, *Mayenne*, and *Nevers*, retired from court; openly shewing their disapprobation of the present government, and raised forces.

Q. Did not the queen endeavour to pacify them?

A. She proposed conditions of peace, which were agreed to, on the 15th of *May* 1614, at *St. Menebault*; whereby it was settled, that the
states

states general should be immediately convoked to reform the disorder of the state.

Q. Were the articles of this agreement religiously observed?

A. Not on the part of the queen; for, the assembly of the states not having been able to remedy the grievances, which the marshal *d'Ancre*, a favourite of her majesty's, had caused in the kingdom, the prince of *Conde*, with many more of the nobility and others, assembled at *Coucy* to deliberate upon their common interests.

Q. Was not the king offended at this assembly?

A. Being upon the road towards the frontiers of the kingdom, to receive the infanta of *Spain*, whom he had espoused; and to conduct thither Madam, his sister, married to the prince of *Spain*; he published a declaration, importing, that the prince of *Conde*, and all those that assisted him, were guilty of high treason: while the queen regent caused the person of the prince to be seized.

Q. What were the consequences of these hostilities?

A. The populace, looking upon the marshal *d'Ancre* as the author of the prince of *Conde*'s imprisonment, plundered his house, and entirely demolished it. In the mean time, *Luynes*, the king's confident, was projecting his destruction, which he accomplished; for the marshal was accordingly shot dead on the 24th of *April* 1617. and the king set the prince of *Conde* at liberty in *October* following; having, when he was thirteen, declared himself major, and taken upon him the management of public affairs.

Q. Was not the face of affairs changed by the death of *d'Ancre*?

A. Not

A. Not much at present ; for those of the reformed religion made themselves masters of the towns wherever they could, and also seized upon the king's revenues.

Q. Did not the king, by force of arms, endeavour to bring them under his obedience ?

A. He hastened into the province of *Xaintonge*, where the danger appeared the greatest ; and, having subdued it, he went into *Guyenne*, *Gascoigne*, and *Languedoc*, where he subjected several places, and then returned to *Paris* ; but, during his absence, fresh ravages were committed in *Poitou*, *Guyenne*, and *Languedoc*.

Q. Was not his majesty determined to go again into these provinces ?

A. He set out, in *May* 1622 ; and, after several engagements, which seemed to have entirely subdued the rebels, he took *Montpelier*, subjected all *Guyenne*, and forced the duke of *Rohan* to implore forgiveness.

Q. Where did the king proceed, after these glorious exploits ?

A. He first visited *Provence* ; saw the city of *Avignon* ; went afterwards to *Grenoble* ; and from thence to *Lyons*, where *Armand-John du Plessis de Richelieu*, bishop of *Lucon*, received the cap of cardinal, which the king had asked for him ; at the same time, his majesty made him prime minister, and reposed the care of the government intirely on him.

Q. How did *Richelieu* behave in this high station ?

A. With absolute power ; for he turned out, or put in, the great officers of state at pleasure ; and the court changed its face at the will of the minister.

Q. In

Q. In what other wars was *Lewis XIII.* engaged?

A. *Charles* the first of *England*, having married the king's sister, and ordered her attendants out of his kingdom, this offended the *French* monarch; and, the affair causing a difference between the *French* and *English*, they began to stop and seize each others ships and merchandize. Upon which, the duke of *Buckingham* was sent with an *English* fleet, and a large body of forces, to surprize the isles of *Re* and *Oleron*, which were near *Rochelle*; and, having made a descent upon the isle of *Re*, the *French* king arrived in the camp before *Rochelle*, resolving to continue the siege, and at the same time to succour the islanders; but, finding some inconvenience from the air of the sea, he was advised by his physicians to return to *Paris*: wherefore, he quitted the camp in *March* 1628, leaving the command of his army, and the conduct of every thing to cardinal *Richelieu*.

Q. Did the cardinal make himself master of *Rochelle*?

A. The king returned in *April*; and, in *September* following, the *Rochellers*, destitute of succours from the *English*, and provisions, implored his majesty's clemency, who granted them a great part of their privileges; but demolished all the fortifications: and, while the king was at this siege, the duke of *Mantua*, being attacked on all sides, begged his protection.

Q. Did *Lewis* comply with his request?

A. This prince being his ally, and vassal; on his return to *Paris*, *Lewis* caused an army, of twenty-two thousand foot, and three thousand horse, to march on that side; and, having put himself

himself at the head of them, in *February* 1629. obliged the duke of *Savoy* to restore to the duke of *Mantua* all the towns he had taken from him : but the duke of *Savoy* afterwards infracted the treaty, which *Lewis* obliged him to renew, by marching another army into *Italy*.

Q. Had the king no domestic troubles amidst his successes in *Italy* ?

A. The duke of *Roban*, having caused the protestants to rise throughout almost all the provinces, the king was obliged to carry his arms against them, who vigorously opposed him till the month of *July* 1629, when the war was concluded by a peace, which the king granted them by an edict published at *Nismes* ; after which, his majesty returned to *Paris*, and ratified the peace and renewal of alliance with *England*. The queen-mother was so incensed against the cardinal, that the king at last ordered her to retire to her seat at *Moulins* ; which so highly offended *Monsieur* his brother, that he left the court, retired into *Lorraine*, and the queen into the *Low Countries*.

Q. What was the event of this family rupture ?

A. *Monsieur*, being upon the point of entering the kingdom with troops which he had drawn from *Lorraine*, the *Low Countries*, and even out of *France*, published a manifesto, in 1632. accusing the cardinal of a design to make himself master of the kingdom. After this, he entered *Burgundy* ; and from thence he went into *Languedoc*, where the duke de *Montmorency*, governor of the province, joined him, in violation of his duty to the king.

Q. Did not *Lewis* oppose the enterprizes of his brother ?

A. He immediately left *Paris*, and caused twenty

twenty thousand men to march for this expedition : but, before he arrived in the province, the duke *de Montmorency*, who commanded the troops of *Monsieur*, was defeated near *Castelnaudary*, by the marshal *de Schomberg*, and taken prisoner.

Q. What was done, on the part of the king, after this defeat ?

A. He offered a pardon to his brother, who accepted it ; but *Montmorency* was beheaded ; while the duke of *Lorraine* was obliged to submit to the terms imposed by his majesty.

Q. Was *Lewis* engaged in no other war ?

A. Yes ; he sent two armies into *Germany* for the assistance of the *Swedes*, who had invaded that country, where their king was killed at the battle of *Lutzen*, fought on the 12th of November 1632. He declared war against the king of *Spain*, who had opposed the *Swedes*, in April 1635, by the herald of arms named *Alençon*, though a war had in reality been carried on for five years before between *France* and the house of *Austria*, under pretence of assisting their allies ; which declaration obliged *Lewis* to keep five armies on foot ; one in the *Low Countries*, another in *Germany*, and the others in *Italy*, *Franch-Compte*, and *Roussillon* ; besides two fleets, one of which was always commanded by the archbishop of *Bordeaux*, and the other by several commanders : the king's enemies took several towns from him, while others were also taken from them : they were victors, and were vanquished in their turn ; and, though the greatest advantages were in favour of the king, yet they were not such as to make it appear, that fortune had declared for him, and abandoned his enemies : the war was of a long continuance, many battles fought, and many sieges formed ; wherein the prince of

Conde,

Conde, the duke of *Reymon*, the marshals *Crequy*, *Biant*, *Turin*, *Harcourt*, *de la Motte Houdancour*, and other generals, greatly distinguished themselves.

Q. Were there no other alliances formed against *Richelieu*?

A. Yes; many more; but, as he was the quickest and most penetrating of men, they all proved abortive; serving only as instruments for the destruction of the projectors.

Q. How long did the cardinal live?

A. He died, on the 14th of *September* 1642, of a general stagnation of blood, caused by a cancer in his arm.

Q. Did the king regret his loss?

A. He seemed glad that he was delivered from a minister whom he esteemed very much, but whom he feared much more.

Q. How long did the king survive this great minister?

A. Only a few months; for he departed this life, on the 14th of *May* 1643. in the forty second year of his age; being the same day whereon *Henry IV.* his father, also died.

LEWIS XIV.

Q. ON whom did the crown of *France* devolve, after the death of *Lewis XIII*?

A. This monarch, who was but ill obeyed in his life-time, flattering himself with the thoughts of having more paid to him after his death, gave the crown to his son *Lewis XIV.* by will, and appointed a regency; the prince being, at that time, a minor.

L

Q. How

Q. How did *Anne of Austria*, the late king's widow, behave on this occasion ?

A. She caused the will of her deceased husband to be annulled by a decree of the parliament of *Paris*, dated the 18th of *August* 1643. in order to obtain to herself an unlimited regency.

Q. I thought, the fundamental laws of *France* excluded all women from the crown ?

A. If you look back into the life of *Henry IV.* you will find, that *Mary of Medicis*, his widow, did the same ; who, perceiving every other way would be tedious and uncertain, ordered the parliament to be surrounded by her guards, and obliged them to act as she desired. Custom, therefore, by which the regency is given to the king's mother, at that time, appeared to the *French* a law, almost as fundamental as that which excludes the females.

Q. How did *Anne of Austria* conduct the affairs of the government, in the beginning of her regency ?

A. She was obliged, at first, to continue the war against her brother *Philip* king of *Spain*, whom she loved.

Q. Where was the seat of this war ?

A. In *Flanders* ; where the *Spaniards* obtained such great advantages, that their old experienced general, *Don Francisco de Mello*, imagined they should soon be able to penetrate as far as the gates of *Paris*, as they had done eight years before. The death of *Lewis XIII.* and the weakness of a minority, animated their hopes ; so that, when they saw themselves opposed by an army inferior in numbers, and commanded by a young man, not more than twenty one years of age, their hopes were changed into certainty.

Q. Who

Q. Who was this unexperienced young general of the *French* army, whom they so much despised?

A. He was *Lewis* of *Bourbon*, then duke d'*Enguien*, afterwards known by the name of the great *Conde*. Most generals have become such by degrees; but this prince was born a general; for, on the death of *Lewis XIII.* though he had received orders not to hazard a battle; though the marshal *de l'Hospital*, who had been given him as a counsellor, to advise and direct him, seconded these timid orders; the duke, communicating his designs only to *Gassion* his marshal de camp, they forced *de l'Hospital* to think a battle necessary.

Q. What success had the duke, in this his first engagement?

A. He surrounded, and attacked the *Spanish* infantry three times successively; and was scarce victorious, before he put a stop to the slaughter; taking as great pains for the preservation of the enemy, as he had done to conquer them.

Q. Who commanded the *Spanish* forces?

A. The count *de Fuentes*, who died of his wounds; and *Conde*, being told of it, said, "that he would have died of his wounds, if he had not conquered."

Q. Did not this victory greatly diminish the dread of the *Spanish* arms, in *Europe*; which till then seemed invincible?

A. Yes, certainly; for as the battles of *Pavia* and *St. Quintin*, were epocha's fatal to the reputation of *France*; so this battle of *Rocroi*, became an epocha of the glory of *France*, and of *Conde*: he knew both how to conquer, and to reap the benefit; therefore, he immediately crossed the enemy's country, deceived the vigilance of

general *Beck*, took *Thionville*, and from thence hastened to besiege *Cirg*, of which he also made himself master.

Q. Where did this young and victorious general march, after these repeated successes?

A. He compelled the *Germans* to repass the *Rhine*, which he also passed after them; with design to repair the losses which the *French* had suffered on their frontiers; where he found *Fribourg* taken, and general *Merci* under its walls with an army superior to his own.

Q. What course was pursued by the prince on this occasion?

A. Here he laid the foundation of that great reputation which he afterwards obtained; for, having under him two marshals of *France*, *Grammont*, and *Turenne*, he ventured to attack the camp of *Merci*, whose troops were intrenched on two eminences. This battle of *Fribourg* was rather bloody than decisive, and the second victory gained by the prince of *Conde*, in *August*, 1644. However, general *Merci* decamped four days after; when *Philipsburg* and *Mayenne* surrendered to the *French*.

Q. What other victories were gained by this young hero?

A. In *August* 1645, he again attacked *Merci* in the plains of *Norlingen*, where *Merci* was slain. In the year 1646, he reduced *Dunkirk*: he afterwards commanded in *Spain*; but the court were obliged to recal him into *Flanders*, where, on the twentieth of *August*, 1648, he defeated the *Spaniards*, and imperialists, at the battle of *Lens*, which compleated his glory. But, in this year, while he was numbering the years of his youth by his victories, the prince of *Conde*, his father, died.

Q. Had

Q. Had *France* no other successful generals ?

A. Yes : the duke of *Orleans*, brother to *Lewis XIII.* in 1644, took *Gravelines*, *Courtray*, and *Mardyke* ; while the viscount de *Turenne* took *Landau*, drove the *Spaniards* out of *Treves*, and re-established the elector. *Turenne* also, in conjunction with the *Swedes*, gained the battles of *Lavingen* and *Sommerhausen* ; and obliged the duke of *Bavaria* to quit his dominions, in 1645. The count de *Harcourt* also took *Balaguier*, and defeated the *Spaniards*, who also lost *Portolongi* in *Italy* : while twenty ships, and twenty gallies of *France*, which composed almost the whole of her naval force, defeated the *Spanish* fleet, in 1646, upon the coast of *Italy*.

Q. What was the consequence of this success ?

A. The *French* troops took *Lorrain* from duke *Charles IV.* while the other allies of *France* distressed the *Austrian* powers both in the north and south. The king of *Spain* beheld *Roussillon* and *Catalonia* in the hands of the *French* : *Naples*, having rebelled against him, had put itself under the protection of the duke of *Guise* : so that people were inclined to believe, that *Vienna* and *Madrid* only waited for the moment when they were to open their gates ; and that the emperor and the king of *Spain* were almost without dominions ; having the *French*, *Swedes*, *Portuguese*, and *Dutch*, against them at one time.

Q. Did not these five years of glory, scarce ever obscured by the least shadow of misfortune, turn out to the real advantage of the *French* nation ?

A. No : though surrounded with apparent prosperity, *France* was, even at this time, upon the brink of destruction : For *Anne* of *Austria*, being absolute regent, had made cardinal *Mazarin* the

master of *France*, and of herself: he had obtained that power over her, which an artful man will acquire over a woman, born without strength sufficient to govern, yet with constancy enough to persist in her choice.

Q. How did the people approve of the queen's reposing her confidence in *Mazarin*?

A. Not at all; for a trifling affair, which in our days would scarce make an article of news, was then the cause of a civil war.

Q. What was this trifling affair, which was attended with such fatal consequences?

A. The creation of twelve places of master of requests, and the non-payment of eighty thousand crowns; together with the seizing of counsellor *Broussel*, clerk of the chamber, a man of no capacity, who had no other merit than that of opposing the court, which caused more affliction among the people, than they ever shewed for the death of a good king. The barricadoes of the league were renewed; and the fire of sedition in a moment burst forth into flames, difficult to be extinguished.

Q. By whom were the people stirred up, and who animated their fury?

A. By a coadjutor, afterwards the cardinal *de Retz*; who was the first bishop that carried on a civil war without the mask of religion.

Q. Whither did the queen retire, when these disturbances commenced?

A. She fled from *Paris* to *St. Germain's*, accompanied by her children, her minister, the duke of *Orleans*, brother of *Lewis XIII.* and the great *Conde* himself, whom the queen, with tears in her eyes, begged to be the king's protector.

Q. Did the prince of *Conde* comply with her majesty's request?

A. He

A. He did: but the parliament, though they had this victor to oppose, dared to pursue the war; being joined by the prince of *Conti*, brother to the great *Conde*, the duke of *Longueville*, the duke of *Beaufort*, and the duke of *Bouillon*; all flattered with the hopes of raising themselves upon the ruins of the state.

Q. Was not this war peculiarly distinguished from other civil wars?

A. It was called the *Fronde*, as being commenced by two powers, constituted by the nation solely to maintain peace; namely, an archbishop, and a parliament of *Paris*.

Q. What preparations did they make towards carrying on the war?

A. Every individual of the *Fronde*, imposed a tax upon himself to raise troops, every great gate furnishing a man and horse; which cavalry was therefore called the cavalry of the *Great-gates*. The coadjutor had a regiment under his own command, which was called the regiment of *Corinth*, because he was titular archbishop of that city.

Q. How did the queen, and prince of *Conde*, oppose the war of the *Fronde*?

A. The prince, incapable of doing any thing not conformable to his past services, besieged five hundred thousand citizens with eight thousand soldiers. The *Parisians* quitted the city, and came out into the fields, many of them dressed up with feathers and ribbands, whose exercises were the jest of the regular troops: for, upon the approach of two hundred of the royal army, they would take to flight, and every thing was turned into ridicule. The regiment of *Corinth* being defeated by a small party, this defeat was called, *The first epistle to the Corinthians*.

Q. Who was at this time the idol of the people?

A. The duke of *Beaufort*, who was the chief instrument employed in working them up to this state of sedition.

Q. How long did this war continue?

A. It was ended and renewed several times; there being scarce any one concerned therein, who did not change parties more than once. The prince of *Conde*, having successfully defended the court, and conducted it in triumph into *Paris*, gave himself up to the pleasure of despising it: accordingly, he leagued with his brother the prince of *Conti*, and the duke *de Longueville*, who abandoned the party of the *Fronde*. The duke of *Beaufort*'s faction, at the beginning of the regency, had been called that of the *Importants*; and that of *Conde*'s, the party of *Petits-maitres*; because their desire was to become masters of the state.

Q. Are there any memorials of these troubles now remaining?

A. Only the name of *Petit-maitre*; which, at this day, is applied to youths of good families, and bad educations; and the name of *Frondeurs*, which is applied to all censurers of the government.

Q. How did the coadjutor behave after the defeat of the *Frondeurs*?

A. He who had declared himself an implacable enemy to the minister, secretly reunited with the court, to obtain a cardinal's cap; and sacrificed the prince of *Conde*, to the resentment of *Mazarin*.

Q. What was the consequence of the coadjutor's perfidy?

A. The prince of *Conde*, with the prince of *Conti*, and the duke *de Longueville*, were seized and

and imprifoned : but, one year after, thefe very *Frondeurs*, who had fold thefe princes to the timid revenge of *Mazarin*, obliged the queen to open their prifons, and banifh her prime minifter. *Conde*, on his re-appearance in public, received the acclamations of thofe very people, whofe hatred againft him had been fo violent : but his prefence renewed the cabals and diffentions.

Q. How long did cardinal *Mazarin* remain in exile, at *Cologne* ?

A. Only a fhort time, and even during that time he governed the court. In *December*, 1651, he re-entered the kingdom, not like a minifter; but like a fovereign, who came to take poffeffion of his dominions; ef-corted by a little army of feven thoufand men, the command of which he gave to the marfhal *de Hoquincourt*.

Q. What fteps were taken by the parliament on this occafion ?

A. It renewed its arrets, prefcribed *Mazarin*, and fet a price upon his head : while it alfo declared the prince of *Conde*, who had taken up arms againft the king's minifters, guilty of high treason; and, through a contradiction which all the former proceedings render credible, it ordered the new raifed troops of *Gafton*, duke of *Orleans*, to march againft *Mazarin*.

Q. Did not *Conde* refent this ufage ?

A. He immediately leagued with the *Spaniards*; and took the field againft the king : in the mean time, *Turenne*, having quitted the fervice of the *Spaniards*, made his peace with the court of *France*, and again commanded the royal army.

Q. Where was *Lewis-XIV.* at this time ?

A. Having been educated in adverfity, he went with his mother, his brother, and the cardinal *Mazarin*, from province to province; having

scarce so many troops about his person, as he afterwards had, in times of peace, for his ordinary guard ; and all the hopes of the court were centered in the marshal *Turenne*.

Q. How did the prince of *Conde* act at this juncture ?

A. The royal army being separated into two bodies, he fell upon that which was commanded by the marshal *de Hoquincourt*, which was dispersed almost as soon as attacked : but *Conde* did not flatter himself he could so easily surprize *Turenne* ; therefore, he marched to *Paris* ; where divisions reigned in the minds of all ; where the shrine of *St. Genevieve* was carried in procession, to obtain the expulsion of *Mazarin* ; and the populace made no doubt but the saint would work this miracle, as well as grant the blessing of rain.

Q. Did the prince of *Conde* increase his power, during his continuance in *Paris* ?

A. No : his army became debilitated, and his authority diminished daily. *Turenne* conducted the king and his court towards the capital ; and the king, from the summit of *Charonne*, beheld the battle of *St. Antony* ; which, though very bloody, was not decisive : for the king was unable to re-enter *Paris* ; and the prince could not continue in it long.

Q. How did the parliament proceed, during this popular tumult ?

A. This body, little intimidated by a court which was wandering about, and distressed by the cabals of the duke of *Orleans* and *Conde*, by an arret, of the twentieth of *July* 1652, declared the former lieutenant general of the kingdom, though the king was of age ; and the latter was stiled generalissimo of the armies.

Q. Did

Q. Did not this arbitrary proceeding of the parliament enrage the court ?

A. The king hereupon ordered this body to be transferred to *Pontoise*, which only some of the counsellors obeyed : so that now there were two parliaments, who disputed each others authority, and issued contradictory arrets. On the twelfth of *August* following, the cardinal *Mazarin* was again banished from court ; when the citizens of *Paris*, voluntarily sent a deputation to the king, to beg his majesty would return to his capital. He accordingly entered it ; and every thing appeared so peaceable, that it was difficult to imagine how, a few days before, every thing could have been in such confusion.

Q. How long did *Mazarin* continue in his second exile ?

A. *Lewis XIV.* sent for him in *March* 1653, received him as his father, and the people as their master. Soon after the parliament condemned the prince of *Conde* to lose his life ; and the cardinal married one of his nieces to the prince of *Conti*, *Conde's* brother ; which was a proof, that the power of this minister was now becoming boundless.

Q. How did *France* recover it self from the disorders of a civil, and the burden of a foreign war, in which she was now engaged ?

A. *Mazarin* was so happy as to conclude that celebrated peace of *Westphalia* in 1648, by which the emperor and the empire sold to the king and crown of *France* the sovereignty of *Alsace* for three millions of livres, payable to the archduke, which makes six millions of the present money of *France*. The emperor's power was hereby also confined within narrow bounds : and the *French*, being united with the *Swedes*, became the

the legislators of *Germany*: so that, in 1653, *Lewis XIV.* found himself absolute master of a kingdom, which was disordered in every part of the administration: though the fruits of the battles of *Rocroi*, *Lens*, and *Norlingen*, were all lost: *Dunkirk* was retaken by the *Spaniards*, who also drove the *French* out of *Barcelona*, and retook *Casal* in *Italy*.

Q. Whither did the prince of *Conde* fly, after his condemnation?

A. He became general of the *Spanish* armies; and, with the archduke, besieged *Arras* in *August*, 1654, where *Turenne* attacked them in their camp, and forced their lines.

Q. How did *Mazarin* manage the affairs of government?

A. Being solely engaged in enriching himself, and encreasing his own power, he suffered the justice, the commerce, the marine, and even the finances of *France*, to languish and decay: insomuch, that *Cromwell* not only forced the king of *France* to acknowledge his title of protector; but also obliged him, to cause *Charles II.* and the duke of *York*, who were the grandsons of *Henry IV.* and to whom *France* owed an asylum, to depart out of his dominions.

Q. What success had *Turenne* against *Conde*, the *Spanish* general, in *Flanders*?

A. *France* having concluded an alliance with *Cromwell*; on one side, admiral *Blake* burnt the *Spanish* galleons, near the *Canaries*, and deprived them of the only treasures with which the war could be supported; on another side, twenty *English* ships blocked up the port of *Dunkirk*; and *Turenne's* army was re-inforced by six thousand veterans, who had effected the revolution in *England*; and *Dunkirk* was besieged both by sea and land.

Q. Did

Q. Did not *Conde*, and *Don John of Austria*, assemble their forces to relieve the place?

A. To no purpose: for the *Spanish* army was destroyed near *Dunes*, on the fourteenth of *June*, 1658; and *Dunkirk* was soon after surrendered. *Lewis XIV.* with *Mazarin*, soon hastened to see the garrison march out; but with no other design than to deliver the town up to *Lockhart*, the embassador of *Cromwell*.

Q. Did not *Mazarin* endeavour to elude the treaty, and avoid giving up the place?

A. He attempted it, by his finesse; but *Lockhart* menaced; and *Italian* policy was subdued by *English* positiveness.

Q. Was not *France*, after the battle of *Dunes*, more powerful abroad, by the glory of its arms?

A. Yes, certainly, from the bad condition of the *European* nations at this juncture: but, at the same time, *France* was distressed at home, by the want of money, and the want of peace; and as the battle of *Dunes* had rendered the *Spaniards* more inclinable to an accommodation, they promised the infant in marriage, and demanded a suspension of arms.

Q. Was this promise accepted on the side of *France*?

A. *Mazarin* and *Don Lewis* met in the isle of *Pheasants*, upon the frontiers of *France* and *Spain*, to treat about it. The conferences continued four months: wherein these two royal agents displayed the utmost strength of their policy: but, such is the vicissitude of all human affairs, that even not two articles now subsist of this famous *Pyrenean* treaty.

Q. Did

Q. Did any present, or real advantages, occur to *France* from the marriage of *Lewis* with the *infanta*?

A. No other than that of peace; for the *infanta* renounced all her right she might have to the dominions of her father *Philip IV.* the *Spanish* towns were delivered up; *Lorrain* restored to its prince; and the great *Conde* received into favour.

Q. How did *Mazarin* behave?

A. After this marriage was consummated, though the cardinal returned more powerful, he was more jealous of his power and honour than ever. He no longer gave precedence to the princes of the blood, as formerly; and he, who had treated *Don Lewis* as his equal, now treated the great *Conde* as his inferior: but he died soon after immensely rich; and the court on this occasion went into mourning.

Q. What character have historians given of *Mazarin*?

A. If we may judge of the characters of men from their enterprizes, it may be justly affirmed that pride and revenge were predominant in the soul of *Richlieu*: but *Mazarin* was prudent, artful, and greedy of riches: however, to discover the degree of genius in a minister, it is necessary either to hear him frequently speak, or to peruse his writings.

Q. In what manner did *Lewis XIV.* conduct the government after the death of *Mazarin*, whom he instructed very late, and then only because his majesty insisted on it?

A. *Lewis*, first restored discipline among his troops, and then order in the finances: magnificence and decency adorned his court; brilliancy and grandeur appearing even in its pleasures. All the

the arts were encouraged, which greatly enhanced the glory of the king, and his kingdom. So that the people, who detested the government of a prime minister, when they beheld *Lewis XIV.* doing that at twenty-two years of age, which *Henry* the great had done at fifty ; they were transported with joy, and not the smallest traces of faction now remained.

Q. Did not this prudent management of *Lewis XIV.* cause jealousy in the court of *Rome* ?

A. The ecclesiastical court only irritated the king, without being able to hurt him. The parliament of *Provence* cited the pope to appear before them, and caused *Avignon* to be seized ; for his excommunications were now disregarded, and even ridiculed.

Q. Did the pope quietly submit to these violent proceedings ?

A. He was obliged to banish his brother from *Rome* ; to send his nephew, cardinal *Chigi*, in quality of legate *à latere* to make the king satisfaction ; to disband the *Corfican* guard ; and to erect a pyramid in *Rome*, with an inscription, giving an account of the injury and satisfaction. He also obliged the pope to relinquish *Castro* and *Ronciglione* to the duke of *Parma* ; and to make the duke of *Modena* satisfaction, in regard to his right to *Comaccio* ; gaining, by this insult, the honour of being protector of the *Italian* princes.

Q. While he thus maintained his dignity, did not *Lewis* forget to encrease his power ?

A. Observe the sequel. His finances, which were excellently managed by *Colbert*, enabled him to purchase *Dunkirk* and *Mardyke* of the king of *England*, in 1662 ; for which *Charles II.* incurred the shame of selling that for money, which had cost the *English* the price of blood :
and

and further, in 1663, *Lewis* forced the duke of *Lorrain* to give up the strong town of *Marsal*; and, at the same time, augmented his own dominions during the peace, by keeping himself always ready for war, fortifying his frontiers, disciplining his troops, increasing their number, and frequently reviewing them.

Q. Did *Lewis* make no use of these troops during the peace?

A. The *Turks* having attacked the emperor, the king sent six thousand men, under the command of *Coligny*, to succour him: and, to increase the reputation of his arms, he secretly supported *Portugal* against *Spain*; by sending four thousand troops under the command of *Schomberg*, a foreigner, and hugonot, who paid them with the money of *Lewis XIV*; though this general pretended to maintain them in the name of the king of *Portugal*. These troops, joined to the *Portuguese*, obtained a compleat victory at *Villa Viciosa*, which fixed the crown in the house of *Braganza*; and thus *Lewis XIV*. made himself regarded as a martial and political prince.

Q. What was the reason that he refused to join those few ships he now had to the fleets of *Holland*, after he had entered into an alliance with the *Dutch*, in 1662?

A. This appeared to him a point of prudence, as well as policy; the sovereignty of the seas being then contended for between *England* and *Holland*, the cause of which was vain and ridiculous; and he thought it more advantageous to his people to employ them in commerce rather than in war.

Q. Of what number of ships was *France* possessed at this juncture?

A. Under the ministry of *Richelieu*, *France* thought

thought herself powerful at sea, with about sixty vessels in all her ports, of which only one carried seventy guns : but *Lewis* undertook to repair the ruinous condition of his marine, and to supply *France* with every thing of this kind which it wanted, with incredible diligence. At the same time, *Philip IV.* king of *Spain*, being in a languishing condition ; while the *English* nation was impoverished by *Charles II.* and the emperor of *Germany*, weakened by his war against the *Turks* ; his monarchy being as feeble as himself ; *Lewis XIV.* was the only great and formidable monarch ; so that, being young, rich, and perfectly well served, he shewed an impatience to become a conqueror.

Q. Did any opportunity offer, whereby he might signalize himself, in what he so anxiously sought after ?

A. His father-in-law, *Philip IV.* died this year ; whereupon *Lewis* pretended, that *Flanders* and *Franche Compté*, which then belonged to *Spain*, ought to revert to his wife ; notwithstanding her renunciation. In consequence of this, he marched into *Flanders* at the head of thirty five thousand men ; while another body of eight thousand was sent towards *Dunkirk* ; and another of four thousand towards *Luxemburg* : *Turenne* being general of the king's army, and *Colbert* having multiplied the resources necessary to defray the expences of these troops.

Q. Was there not something further remarkable in this expedition ?

A. Yes ; *Louvois*, the new minister for military affairs, had made immense preparations for the campaign. He distributed magazines of all kinds upon the frontiers ; being the first who introduced that advantageous method, which the weakness

weakness of the government had before rendered impracticable, of subsisting armies by the means of magazines ; from which time the military employment began to be considered as an honour, much superior to that of birth.

Q. What success had *Lewis* in this campaign ?

A. His conquest of *Flanders* was rapid ; he entered *Charleroy*, as he would have entered *Paris* ; *Aeth* and *Tournay* were taken in two days ; nor did *Furnes*, *Armentieres*, or *Courtrai*, hold out much longer ; *Douai* also surrendered ; and *Lisle*, the most flourishing city in the country, having six thousand men in garrison, capitulated after nine days : while the *Spaniards*, consisting only of eight thousand men, with their generals, fled under the walls of *Mons* and *Brussels* ; leaving the king a conqueror without fighting : all which happened, in 1667.

Q. Whither did *Lewis* carry his arms, after the conquest of *Flanders* ?

A. Into *Franche-Compte* ; where twenty thousand men, assembled on the second of *February*, from twenty different places, were commanded by the great *Conde* ; whose principal lieutenant was *Montmorency*, afterwards duke of *Luxembourg*.

Q. What were the true motives of this sudden and unexpected enterprize ?

A. The prince of *Conde* was jealous of the glory of *Turenne* ; and *Louvois*, of his favour with the king ; *Conde's* glory was that of an hero, and *Louvois* that of a minister. The prince, being governor of *Burgundy*, which joins to *Franche-Compte*, formed a design to make himself master of that province in the winter, in less time than *Turenne*, the summer before, had conquered *French Flanders* : he instantly communicated his design

design to *Louvois*, who entered into it with eagerness, in order to render *Turenne* unnecessary, and, at the same time, to serve his master.

Q. What was the state of this province when the design was entered into?

A. It was then poor enough with regard to money, but exceeding fruitful and populous; forty leagues in length, and twenty in breadth: being not only called *Franche*, or free, but it really was so; and, though it belonged to the government of *Flanders*, it depended but very little upon it. Their love for the house of *Austria* had continued for two centuries; though it might rather be called the love of their liberties. In short, *Franche-Compte*, though poor, was happy; and, as it was a kind of republic, was not without factions; nor was force the only means to subject this province.

Q. How did *Conde* succeed in this undertaking?

A. Having corrupted some of the principal officers of the province, he immediately invested *Besançon*, the capital of the province; while *Luxembourg* appeared before *Salins*; and the next day both these places surrendered.

Q. What was done by *Lewis* on this intelligence?

A. He immediately hastened, thither, where fortune did every thing in his favour. He besieged *Dole* in 1668, and entered it after four days; being but twelve days after his departure from *St. Germain*s; and all *Franche-Compte* was subjected to him in less than three weeks.

Q. What were the most considerable events which happened in this period?

A. What is called *French Flanders* had been taken in three months; and *Franche-Compte*, in three weeks; which alarmed the neighbouring nations;
so

so that the treaty between *Holland*, *England*, and *Sweden*, to preserve the balance of *Europe*, and put a stop to the ambition of *Lewis XIV.* was proposed and concluded in five days.

Q. Was not *Lewis* filled with indignation, to behold such a little state as *Holland*, forming designs to set bounds to his conquests?

A. His indignation was increased when he found this little state was able to do this: but, notwithstanding his rage, he was obliged to form a scheme of peace, in order to dissipate the storm now rising in all parts of *Europe*.

Q. Where were the conferences held?

A. *France* and *Spain* fixed upon *Aix-la-Chapelle*, for the place; and pope *Clement IX.* the new pope, was named for mediator: but the *Hollanders* conducted the negotiation by their ambassador *Van Beunning*; whereby a peace was concluded on the second of *May* 1668; but in an authoritative manner by a burgo-master, at the court of the most superb of monarchs: however, *Lewis*, though by this treaty he was obliged to relinquish *Franche Compté*, gained more by keeping the Towns in *Flanders*; while he opened the ports in *Holland*, whose destruction he meditated, at the very time he seemed to comply with their demands.

Q. How did this enterprizing prince employ the time, in which he was compelled to remain in peace?

A. Just as he had begun; in regulating, fortifying, and adorning his kingdom. It was really wonderful to behold the sea-ports, which before were deserted and in ruins, now surrounded with works, which were at once their ornament and defence; filled with ships and mariners, and containing sixty large men of war. New colonies, under

under his flag, were sent into *America*, the *East-Indies*, and to the coasts of *Africa*. Many thousand men were employed in the construction of immense edifices ; literature flourished ; while the barbarity of the schools, was corrected by good sense, and good taste.

Q. Did *Lewis* find no business for his troops, during this peaceful interval ?

A. The *Turks* having besieged *Candy* ; the king sent his gallies, and new ships which he had just built in the port of *Toulon*, with seven thousand men to its relief, under the command of the duke of *Beaufort* ; thereby setting an example to the other christian powers of *Europe*, who declined imitating this generosity of the *French*.

Q. How did the duke of *Beaufort* succeed in this expedition ?

A. He was slain in a sally, on the 16th of *September* 1669 ; while the *Turks* not only reduced the place ; but, in this siege, shewed themselves even superior to the christians in the military art.

Q. Was not the king affected by these distant revolutions ?

A. Very little ; he matured his great design of making a conquest of the *Low Countries*, which he intended to commence by that of *Holland* ; for this little republic ruled upon the seas ; but nothing could be weaker by land ; and the opportunity grew daily more favourable.

Q. Were not the *Dutch* at this time allied with *England* and *Spain*, and in peace with *France* ?

A. Yes ; but they reposed too great a security in treaties : for the first thing *Lewis* thought necessary to be done, was to detach *England* from its alliance ; and, being deprived of this support,
the

the king thought the destruction of the united provinces inevitable; nor did he find it difficult to engage *Charles II.* in his designs.

Q. How did *Lewis* manage this affair?

A. He sent the princess *Henrietta* into *England* to see her brother, who was at *Canterbury* to receive her; where, being seduced by his friendship for his sister, and the money of *France*, he signed every thing *Lewis XIV.* desired; preparing the destruction of *Holland* in the midst of his pleasures and diversions. *Lewis* also purchased the elector of *Cologne*; and *Van Gaalen*, that bishop of *Munster*, who thirsted for war, and was naturally an enemy to the *Hollanders*.

Q. Were not the states general in consternation at the great preparations making against them?

A. They wrote to the king, desiring to know wherein they had offended him, and what reparation he expected. To which he replied, that the *Dutch Gazette* had been too insolent; and *Van Beunning* had struck a medal injurious to him.

Q. What were the preparations made by *Lewis* for this enterprize?

A. All that human prudence and ambition are capable of contriving for the destruction of a nation, was done by *Lewis XIV.* ninety seven millions of the present *French* money were expended in the preparations. Thirty ships, of fifty guns, joined the *English* fleet of one hundred sail. The king, with his brother, appeared upon the frontiers of *Spanish Flanders* and *Holland*, near *Maastricht* and *Charleroy*, at the head of upwards of one hundred and twelve thousand men. The bishop of *Munster*, and the elector of *Cologne*, had near twenty thousand. The generals of the king's

king's army were *Conde* and *Turenne*; *Luxembourg* commanded under them; *Vauban* was to conduct the sieges; and *Louvois* appeared in all places, with his usual vigilance. A finer, and, at the same time, a better disciplined army had never been seen. In particular, the king's household troops, as newly reformed, made a most gallant appearance; being composed of four troops of life guards, containing three hundred gentlemen.

2. What had *Holland* to oppose this mighty armament?

A. Only a young prince, of a weakly constitution, who had never seen a siege, and had only twenty five thousand bad soldiers; namely, prince *William of Orange*, aged twenty two years; who had been elected captain of the forces.

2. Was he able to make any opposition to this torrent which burst in upon his country?

A. But very little at present. All the towns which bordered upon the *Rhine* and *Iffel* surrendered; and as soon as the king made the famous passage of the *Rhine*, they took *Doesbourgh*, *Zutphen*, *Arnheim*, *Nurembourgh*, *Nimeguen*, *Skenk*, *Bommel*, *Crevecœur*, and other places; there being but few hours in a day, wherein the king did not receive an account of some conquest. An officer, named *Mazel*, made this request to *Turenne*, "If you will send me about fifty horse, I can, with them, take two or three towns." *Utrecht* sent its keys and capitulated, together with all the province which bears its name; and *Lewis* made his triumphal entry into that city. *Overissel* and *Guelders*, were subjected; and *Amsterdam* expected the moment of its slavery, or ruin was at hand. *Naerden*, in the neighbourhood of *Amsterdam*, was already taken; and a little diligence

gence would have put the king in possession of that capital, which, being once taken, not only the republic would have perished, but the whole nation of *Holland* would no more have existed; and even the land itself would soon have disappeared.

Q. What did the richest families, and those the most desirous of liberty, propose to do on this emergency?

A. They prepared to embark for *Batavia*, and fly even to the extremities of the world: nay, the ships capable to make this voyage were numbered; and it was found that fifty thousand families might be embarked to take refuge in their new country: so that *Amsterdam* would at last have been overwhelmed by the sea; leaving *Lewis XIV.* only the wretched glory of having destroyed one of the finest and most extraordinary monuments of human industry.

Q. What was done by the *Hollanders*, in the midst of these disorders and devastations?

A. The magistrates manifested virtues, which are seldom seen but in republics, and when the redress of misfortunes appears to be irremediable. They flew to extremes: they caused the banks, which kept out the sea, to be cut; and the country houses, which are innumerable about *Amsterdam*, with the villages, and neighbouring towns, such as *Leyden* and *Delft*, to be overwhelmed: nor did the country people repine at seeing their herds of cattle drowned in the fields. *Amsterdam* appeared like a vast fortress in the midst of the sea, surrounded with ships of war, which had depth of water sufficient to make them be stationed round the city.

Q. Did the states of *Holland*, thus overwhelmed

ed on land, and, as it were, now no longer a state, yet continue formidable at sea?

A. That is the true element of this people. While *Lewis XIV.* crossed the *Rhine*, admiral *Ruyter* went in search of the united fleets of *England* and *France*, and engaged them with success. This battle, called the *Solbay*, lasted one entire day; the consequence of which was, that the coasts of *Holland* were rendered secure.

Q. What was the behaviour of the prince of *Orange* on this occasion?

A. By the secrecy of his negotiations, he roused the emperor, the council of *Spain*, and the government of *Flanders*, from their lethargy, and even disposed *England* to peace. In short, *Lewis* entered *Holland* in the month of *May*; and, in *July* following, all *Europe* began to conspire against him.

Q. Who came first to the relief of the united provinces?

A. *Monterey*, governor of *Flanders*, privately sent some forces; the emperor *Leopold*, sent *Montecuculi*, at the head of twenty thousand men; and the elector of *Brandenbourg* came with twenty five thousand more.

Q. What was the consequence of these several armaments, appearing to succour the *Hollanders*?

A. *Lewis*, satisfied with taking so many towns in two months, returned to *St. Germain*s; all the fruit of his enterprize being a cruelty which rendered the *French* odious in this country. *Bodegrave*, and *Suвамerдам*, two rich and populous towns, which might be compared to many rich cities, were abandoned to be plundered by the soldiers, as a reward for their fatigues: who set these two towns on fire; and, by the light of

the flames, committed all kinds of cruelty and debauchery.

Q. Did not *Lewis* endeavour to regain the interest of the powers now in alliance with the republic ?

A. By his negotiations, in 1673, he influenced the duke of *Hanover*, and the elector of *Brandenbourg*. There were none of the *German* courts, wherein he had not his pensioners. He fomented troubles in *Hungary*, which was severely treated by the court of *Vienna*. Money was lavished upon the king of *England*, to engage him to continue the war against *Holland* : but, notwithstanding *Lewis* greatly disturbed the peace of *Europe* by his arms and negotiations, he could not prevent the empire and *Spain* from joining the *Dutch*, and declaring war against him.

Q. In what condition was the naval force of *France* at this time ?

A. *Lewis* had greatly improved it, even in the space of one year ; for, instead of thirty ships, which had been joined the year before to the *English* fleet, forty were now joined, without including the fireships. The officers had learned those excellent rules of fighting, practised by the *English*, whereby they had combated their enemies the *Dutch* : so that the vice admiral *d'Etree*, and *Martel* his lieutenant, did honour to the military industry of the *French* nation, in three successive naval engagements, which happened on the 7th, 14th, and 21st of *June* 1673, between the *Dutch* fleet with those of *England* and *France* ; but, as admiral *Ruyter* commanded the *Dutch*, the courage and conduct on both sides were so equal, that the victory always remained undecided

Q. How did *Lewis* proceed against the *Dutch* by land ?

A. *Colbert*

A. Colbert having made his people seamen; and *Vauban* having rendered the art of war by land, still more perfect; the king went in person to besiege *Maestricht*, which surrendered at the end of eight days, on the 24th of *June* 1673: while the prince of *Conde* also endeavoured to penetrate into the heart of *Holland*, when overwhelmed with waters: but in vain. *Turenne* could neither prevent the junction of *Montecuculi*, and the prince of *Orange*; nor hinder the latter from taking *Bonn*: and the bishop of *Munster*, who had sworn the destruction of the states general, was himself attacked by the *Dutch* in the foregoing year.

2. Did *England* still continue in alliance with *France*?

A. The parliament obliged its king to enter into negotiations of peace; so that it became necessary for the *French* to abandon the three provinces of *Holland*, with as much expedition as they had been conquered, for a small ransom; the *French* being in such a hurry to evacuate the country which they had taken with such rapidity, that twenty eight thousand *Dutch* prisoners were released at a crown a man. The fruits of this second enterprize were a bloody war for *Lewis* to maintain against *Spain*, the empire, and *Holland*, united; while he was abandoned by *England*, at last by *Munster*, and even by *Cologne*; leaving more hatred than admiration behind him, in those territories, the conquest of which he was forced to relinquish.

2. But as he was an absolute monarch, and his finances well-managed, was he not able to carry on the war?

A. He had doubtless the advantage over other kings; for, at one and the same time, he caused

an army of twenty three thousand men, to march, under *Turenne*, against the imperialists; another of forty thousand against the prince of *Orange*; a considerable body of troops was also assembled at *Roussillon*; and a fleet filled with soldiers, was sent to carry the war against the *Spaniards*, even as far as *Messina*.

Q. Did not *Lewis* march in person, a second time, to make himself master of *Franche-Compte*?

A. Yes; after bribing the *Switzers*, accompanied by his brother, and the son of the great *Conde*, he besieged *Besançon*, which was taken in nine days, on the 15th of *May* 1674; and, at the end of six weeks, all *Franche-Compte* was subjected to the king; after which it continued under the dominion of *France*, and seems to be forever annexed to it; remaining a monument of the weakness of the the *Austrian Spanish* ministry, and of the strength of that of *Lewis XIV*.

Q. How did *Turenne*, with his little army, defend the frontiers on the side of the *Rhine*?

A. He displayed every thing that is greatest, and most consummate, in the art of war. Men discover their abilities by the difficulties they surmount. He, at first, made a long and rapid march; passed the *Rhine* at *Philipsbourg*, in *July* 1674; marched all night to *Sintzheim*; forced that place, and, at the same time, attacked and defeated *Caprara*, the emperor's general, and the old duke of *Lorrain Charles IV*. who had spent all his life in losing his territories, and raising troops; and who had lately united his little army with part of the emperor's. *Turenne*, after having defeated him, pursued him, and again defeated his cavalry at *Ladimbourg*, in *July* following; from whence he hastened to the prince

prince de *Bournonville*, attacked him, and forced him to quit the field of battle.

Q. Did not this success of *Turenne* highly exasperate the empire?

A. It immediately assembled all its forces against him; and seventy thousand *Germans* entered *Alsace*, where they besieged *Brissac* and *Philipsbourg*.

Q. Of what number of forces did *Turenne's* army consist?

A. He had but twenty thousand effective men at most; till the prince of *Conde* sent him a small body of cavalry from *Flanders*. However, with these few, he made a surprizing passage into upper *Alsace*, where he defeated the imperialists at *Mulhausen*, and drove the elector of *Brandenburg* before him at *Colmar*: after which, he posted himself, on the 5th of *September* 1675. near *Turkheim*, in order to attack a part of the enemies infantry, where his advantageous situation rendered his victory certain: for he defeated this infantry; and, at last, dispersed this whole army of seventy thousand men, without any considerable engagement: whereby *Alsace* remained to the king, and the imperial generals were compelled to pass the *Rhine*.

Q. Whither did *Turenne* march after this battle?

A. He put the Palatinate, which was a fine and fertile country, full of populous towns and villages, to fire and sword: the elector *Palatine*, from the top of his castle at *Manheim*, beholding two cities, and twenty five towns, in flames; a spectacle which, at once, excited in him both rage and despair: while the *French* cavalry were permitted to ravage *Lorrain*.

Q. What success had the prince of *Conde* in *Flanders*,

Flanders, during the conquests of *Turenne* in *Germany*?

A. He was to keep the field with about forty thousand men, against the prince of *Orange*, who had sixty thousand; where the former waited for the latter to pass a defile at *Senef*, near *Mons*; upon which, a bloody engagement ensued: but the troops on both sides, after a most obstinate contest, being seized with a panic, took flight in the night: and, the next day, the two armies retired, each on its own side; neither of them having gained the field: but seven thousand of the *French* were killed, and five thousand taken prisoners; the loss of the enemy being nearly the same: after which, the prince of *Orange* besieged *Oudenarde*; but the siege was immediately raised by the prince of *Conde*.

Q. Did *Turenne* make any farther progress in *Germany*, after the conquest of *Alsace*?

A. The council of *Vienna*, no longer daring to trust the fortune of the empire to those princes who had so ill defended it, placed at the head of its armies that experienced general named *Montecuculi*. These two great men opposed each other with so much patience, stratagem, and activity, that, at last, they were upon the point of coming to an engagement, near the village of *Salzbach*, when *Turenne*, in going to choose a place whereon to erect a battery, was killed, by a cannon shot, on the 27th of *July* 1675.

Q. What happened in *Alsace* after the death of this illustrious commander?

A. *Montecuculi*, who, by the skill of *Turenne*, had been kept three whole months on the other side of the *Rhine*, now passed that river, and penetrated into *Alsace*, with a body of twenty thousand *Germans*; where he not only besieged *Treves*,

Treves, but defeated, and cut to pieces, the little army of *Crequi*, of which no more than a fourth part escaped. *Crequi* being taken prisoner, *Lewis XIV.* was obliged to cause the ban, and *arriere-ban* to march: but, those gentlemen, whose ordinary occupation was the cultivation of their estates, went against their inclination, to the number of about four thousand, without experience, and without discipline.

Q. Who commanded the *French* army in *Alsace*, after *Turenne* was dead, and *Crequi* was taken prisoner?

A. The prince of *Conde*, having left the marshal *de Luxembourg* in *Flanders*, went into *Germany*, and by two encampments stopped the progress of *Montecuculi*; obliging him to raise the sieges of *Hanau* and *Saverne*: but, after this campaign, which was less brilliant, and more serviceable than that of *Senef*, the prince of *Conde* ceased to appear in the wars.

Q. By whom was the king served after the death of *Turenne*, and the retreat of the prince of *Conde*?

A. By officers who had formed themselves under these two great men. *Louvois* was of greater service to him than a general: but all the operations were directed by *Vauban*, *d'Humieres*, *Schomberg*, *la Feuillade*, *Luxembourg*, and *de Lorges*, five marshals of *France*, having each of them their day of command by turns.

Q. What remarkable exploits were performed by *Lewis* in the course of this war?

A. He, in person, took *Conde*, and *Bouchain*, in *April* and *May* 1676; as also *Valenciennes*, and *Cambray*, in *March* and *April* 1677. He had also the glory of taking *Ghent*, in four days; and *Ypres* in seven; both these places being re-

duced in *March* 1678. These were the actions which he personally atchieved ; but his successes by generals were still greater. Indeed, the duke *de Luxembourg* suffered *Philipsbourg* to be taken in his sight, endeavouring in vain to succour it with an army of fifty thousand men.

Q. Who was the general that took *Philipsbourg* ?

A. *Charles V.* duke of *Lorrain*, heir to his uncle *Charles IV.* and like him divested of his territories : but the marshal *de Crequi*, being released from his imprisonment, took several places in *Germany*, and baffled all his attempts to enter *Lorrain* : while the prince of *Orange*, in endeavouring to succour *St. Omer*, lost the battle of *Montcassel*, against *Monsieur* the brother of *Lewis XIV.*

Q. Were the taking of so many towns, and the gaining so many battles, in *Flanders* and *Germany*, the only successes of *Lewis XIV* ?

A. No : the marshal *de Navailles*, defeated the *Spaniards* in *Lampourdan* ; and they were attacked even in *Sicily*, where the magistrates of *Messina* had raised up the flames of a civil war against their governors, and called *France* to their assistance ; when their port was blocked up by the *Spanish* fleet, and the inhabitants reduced to the extremities of famine.

Q. Who did *Lewis* send to their relief ?

A. The chevalier *Valbelle* came first, with a few frigates, with which he ventured through the *Spanish* fleet, and brought provisions, troops, and arms, into *Messina*. After him, the duke *de Vivonne* arrived, with seven men of war of sixty guns, two of eighty, and several fireships, with which he defeated the *Spanish* fleet, and entered *Messina* in triumph on the 9th of *February* 1675 :
whereupon

whereupon *Spain* implored the assistance of the *Dutch*, and *Ruyter* sailed with succours, adding twenty three large ships of war, to twenty *Spanish* vessels.

Q. Did the duke *de Vivonne* venture to engage this combined fleet?

A. Being obliged to continue in *Messina* to pacify the people, he gave the command of the *French* fleet to *Duquene*, his lieutenant-general of the naval forces; who, in 1676, gave battle twice to the fleets of the enemy, and *Ruyter* received a wound in the second engagement, on the 12th of *March*, which put an end to his glorious life. *Duquene*, after the death of *Ruyter*, attacked them a third time; when he sunk, burnt, and took several of their ships: but the glory acquired in *Sicily* was the price of too great treasures; and the *French*, at last, evacuated *Messina*, at the very time when it was generally believed they would make themselves masters of the whole island.

Q. Did not these repeated successes alarm the other princes of *Europe*?

A. Yes, certainly; but *Lewis* raised new enemies against the house of *Austria*, fomented troubles in *Hungary*, and his embassadors at the *Ottoman* port were earnest in their endeavours to make the *Turks* carry the war into *Germany*; notwithstanding, to save appearances, *Lewis* was to send some succours against them.

Q. Were there no conferences for peace in the course of this war?

A. Proposals of this nature were continually carried on; first at *Cologne*, by the ineffectual mediation of *Sweden*; and afterwards at *Nimeguen*, by that of *England*: but the *English* mediation was only a ceremony; for *Lewis* himself

was the real arbitrator. He made his proposals on the 9th of *April* 1678, and gave his enemies till the 10th of *May* to accept of them. He also granted a farther time of six weeks to the states-general, who begged it very submissively.

Q. Was his ambition still turned against *Holland*?

A. No: this republic had been so fortunate, or so cunning, as to appear only as an auxiliary in a war, which had been commenced for her destruction: while the empire and *Spain*, who at first had been only auxiliaries, at last became the principal parties concerned.

Q. What were the conditions which the king imposed upon his enemies?

A. He favoured the commerce of the *Dutch*, restoring to them *Maestricht*: he also restored to the *Spaniards*, as a barrier to the united provinces, *Courtray*, *Oudenard*, *Ghent*, *Charleroy*, and *Limbourg*: but reserved to himself *Cambrai*, *Conde*, *Bouchain*, *Charlemont*, *Ypres*, and some other places, which made a considerable part of *Flanders*; whereto he added *Franche-Compte*, which he had conquered twice: and these might be considered as a sufficient compensation for the toil and expence of the war.

Q. Did *Europe* at this time receive both its laws and its peace from his hands?

A. No alterations were made in the conditions prescribed by *Lewis XIV.* only the *Germans* signed the treaty last, relinquishing *Fribourg* to the king, and confirming the treaties of *Westphalia*. The duke of *Lorrain*, indeed, rejected it; choosing rather to be a fugitive prince in the empire, than a sovereign in his own dominions, without honour, or power. But, four days after the plenipotentiaries had signed the peace, the prince

prince of *Orange* attacked marshal *Luxemburgh* at *St. Denis*.

Q. Did nothing further remarkable appear in this peace?

A. It evidently proved how entirely projects are defeated by events. *Holland*, against whom only the war had been undertaken, and which was to have been destroyed, lost nothing by it; and, on the contrary gained a barrier: but all the other powers, who had protected it from destruction, were losers. The *French* king, who had been the terror of *Europe* for ten years together, was at last its peace-maker; and therein added *Franche Compté*, *Dunkirk*, and half *Flanders* to his dominions: but, what should be considered as the greatest honour, is, that he was a king over a people who were happy at that time; which occasioned the *hotel de Ville* at *Paris*, in 1680, to apply the title of GREAT to him, in the most solemn manner.

Q. Did this general peace restrain the ambition of *Lewis XIV.*

A. He made it a time for conquests, and established jurisdictions in *Metz* and *Brissac*, to reunite all those territories to his crown, which might formerly have depended upon *Alsace*, or the three bishopricks; but which, from time immemorial, had been under other masters. Nor was it enough for the king to have the prefecture of ten free cities of *Alsace*, under the same title by which the emperor had held them; for now they no longer dared to talk of liberty in any of these cities: though *Strasburgh* still preserved its freedom; being a large and rich city; mistress of the *Rhine*, by means of its bridge over that river; and forming of itself a powerful republic,
famous

famous for its arsenal, which contained nine hundred pieces of cannon.

Q. Did not the king endeavour to make himself master of this city?

A. *Louvois* corrupted the magistrates with money, and the people were astonished to see their ramparts at once surrounded by twenty thousand *French* troops; *Louvois* at their gates; and their burgomasters talking of a surrender: but they could not hinder him from entering their city the same day, which was done on the thirtieth of *September*, 1681. He also demanded of *Spain* the town of *Alost*; and purchased *Casal* of the duke of *Mantua*.

Q. Was not the alarm of *Europe* revived on this occasion?

A. The empire, *Holland*, and even *Sweden*, having taken umbrage at it, entered into an alliance. The *English* menaced; the *Spaniards* seemed disposed for war; and the prince of *Orange* did his utmost to have it declared: but none of these powers, at that time, had courage to strike the first stroke.

Q. In what condition was the marine of *France* during these transactions?

A. *England*, and *Holland*, had neither so many sailors, nor such excellent laws: the port of *Toulon* was constructed, at an immense expence, so as to contain one hundred men of war: the port of *Brest* was formed upon as extensive a plan: *Dunkirk*, and *Havre de grace*, were filled with ships: and *Rochefort*, in spite of nature, was made a place of trade and naval force: so that *Lewis* had upwards of one hundred ships of the line, several of which carried one hundred guns, some even more; and they were manned with sixty thousand seamen: a part of whom, under

Duquene

Duquene, cleared the seas infested by the corsairs of *Tripoli* and *Algiers*; and, in *October*, 1681, the *Algerines* were astonished at the demolition of part of their city by the bombs on board the *French* fleet; which was the first time bombs were used at sea.

Q. How were the king's land forces employed?

A. He had an army upon the frontiers of the empire to defend it against the *Turks*, whom he had brought thither by his negotiations; whereby he hoped to be the protector of *Germany*, and to make his son king of the *Romans*: but, in this, he was prevented by the bravery of *John Sobieski*, king of *Poland*, who drove the insolent *Turks* from the gates of *Vienna*, and defeated their whole army.

Q. Did not *Lewis* re-commence his hostilities in *Flanders*?

A. Yes: he besieged, and took *Luxemburgh*, *Courtray*, and *Dixmude*: he also seized upon *Treves*, and demolished its fortifications: but, while he was taking their towns, the imperialists and *Spaniards* negotiated with him at *Raitsbon*; and the violated peace of *Nimeguen*, was changed into a truce for twenty years; whereby the king kept *Luxemburg* with all its principality.

Q. Did *Lewis* extend his arms to any other quarter of the world?

A. He was still more formidable on the coast of *Africa*; for *Algiers*, which was twice bombard-
ed, sent deputies to beg pardon, and receive peace: they released all the christian slaves, and paid a sum of money; which is the severest punishment that can be inflicted on the corsairs: and *Tunis* and *Tripoli* made the same submission.

Q. Was not the king highly incensed at the *Genoese* likewise?

A. This

A. This republic humbled itself before him more than that of *Algiers* : for, after having reduced that fine city to a heap of ruins, by throwing fourteen thousand bombs into it, *Duquene* landed four thousand soldiers, who advanced up to the gates, and burnt the suburbs of *St. Peter de Arena*, on the seventeenth of *March*, 1684 ; all which was done, only because the *Genoese* neglected to obey the commands of *Lewis*, in not daring to launch some gallies they had built in their own ports.

Q. In what manner did the *Geneose* prevent their total ruin ?

A. The king insisted that the *Doge*, and four of the principal senators, should come and implore his clemency in his palace of *Versailles* : and, to prevent the *Genoese* from eluding this satisfaction, or depriving him of any part of his glory, he declared, that the *Doge*, who should be sent to beg his pardon, should continue in his dignity ; notwithstanding that perpetual law of *Genoa*, by which the *Doges* are deprived of that dignity, whenever they absent themselves a moment from the city.

Q. How did *Lewis* stand affected towards the court of *Rome* ?

A. He treated the pope haughtily, by depriving him of *Avignon* ; and, at the same time, he prepared for war against the emperor : thus, at the height of his glory and greatness, offending, despoiling, or humbling all the princes round him ; yet, at the same time, making almost all of them unite, and conspire against him.

Q. Who was it that first formed a league in *Europe* against *France* ?

A. The prince of *Orange*, more ambitious than *Lewis XIV.* formed vast designs, and such

as might appear chimerical in a stadtholder of *Holland*; but which he justified by his dexterity and courage. The emperor, part of the empire, *Holland*, and the duke of *Lorrain*, were the first that entered into this alliance, secretly at *Augsburgh*; which was soon strengthened by the accession of *Spain* and *Savoy*; while the pope, by his secret practices, contributed not a little to forward their designs: *Venice* would not declare openly; but all the *Italian* princes were in the interest of the allies, at a time when six hundred thousand protestants fled out of *France* from the persecution of *Lewis*.

2. What was the first step taken by the prince of *Orange*?

A. His father-in-law, *James II.* having abdicated his crown, the prince procured himself to be acknowledged lawful king of *England*, by the name of *William III.* in conjunction with his consort *Mary* the daughter of *James*, who with his queen, the duke of *Modena's* daughter, fled to *France*, and implored the protection of *Lewis XIV.* who made great preparations to re-establish him in his kingdom.

2. What method was taken by *Lewis* to effect this design?

A. He fitted out a fleet of thirteen ships of the first rate at *Brest*, and sent *James* over to *Ireland*, where there were a formidable body of *Roman-catholicks* in his interest. The fleet was furnished with arms and ammunition, and there was likewise put on board ordinary and rich furniture of all sorts. No sooner had *James* landed in *Ireland*, but he was followed by another fleet of twenty-three men of war, with a considerable number of transport ships. In *March* 1690 there was a third embarkation at *Brest*, *Toulon*, and *Roche-fort*;

fort; and, in July following, *Tourville*, the *French* admiral, with seventy-two ships, fell in with the *English* and *Dutch* fleet, consisting of sixty sail; when a desperate fight ensued, which lasted ten hours; wherein the latter were defeated.

Q. What succeeded this naval victory?

A. Soon after a bold enterprizing minister, called *Seignelai*, ordered to sea a number of gallies from *Marseilles*: which was the first time the *English* coasts were visited by these vessels; by means whereof the *French* made a descent at *Tinmouth*, and destroyed, in the bay, above thirty merchant ships. The privateers of *St. Malo's* and *Dunkirk*, were continually taking prizes; doing great service thereby to the public, and enriching themselves: so that, for two years, the *French* were sole masters at sea.

Q. What success had *James* in *Ireland*?

A. He soon returned again to *France*; leaving his rival to gain new victories, and to establish himself more firmly on his throne. The fleets of *Lewis* were now employed in bringing over the *French*, who had fought to no purpose, as well as great number of *Irish* families, who, living but poorly in their own country, chose rather to go over to *France* to live on the royal bounty.

Q. Was not *Lewis*, by these disappointments, discouraged from making any more efforts in favour of *James*?

A. No: He resolved to make a descent on *England* with twenty thousand men; for which purpose three hundred transports were got ready at *Brest*. *Tourville*, with forty-four men of war, waited for them on the coasts of *Normandy*; and *D'Etrées* was on his way from *Toulon*, with another squadron of thirty sail: but the wind, which was at first favourable to the squadron

dron commanded by *D'Etrées*, chopped about, which prevented his joining *Tourville*, who was attacked by the united fleets of *England* and *Holland*, consisting of near one hundred sail.

Q. Which of them obtained the victory?

A. The *French* were obliged to sheer off, after an obstinate fight of ten hours. *Ruffel*, the *English* admiral, pursued them for two days: fourteen of their largest ships, two of which mounted one hundred and four guns, were stranded on the coast; and the captains, knowing they must be destroyed by the enemy, fired them with their own hands.

Q. Was not this the first check which the maritime power of *Lewis* received?

A. It was: but, the very year after this defeat at *La Hogue*, the *French* navy was as formidable as ever: *Tourville* being soon at the head of sixty ships of the line; and thirty more were under the command of *D'Etrées*, exclusive of those which lay in the harbours.

Q. What use did *Lewis* make of this formidable armament?

A. Four years after, he equipped a squadron, more numerous than ever, to convoy *James* to *England*, with twenty thousand *French*: but the measures pursued by *James's* friends at *London*, are said to be as ill conducted, as they had been well concerted in *France*; which rendered this fleet of no service.

Q. What passed on the continent, while *William* took possession of *Great Britain*?

A. *Lewis*, having increased his naval power to such a degree as no nation ever exceeded, had, at this time, to encounter with the emperor, the empire, *England*, *Holland*, *Savoy*, and almost all *Italy*. One only of these enemies, such as *England*,

or *Spain*, would have been sufficient formerly to have crushed *France*; but, now, all together could hardly struggle with her.

Q. How many armies had *Lewis* during the course of this war?

A. He had generally five, sometimes six, and never less than four. Those in *Germany* and *Flanders* often amounted to one hundred thousand soldiers; besides garrisons kept up in the frontier towns: so that this monarch had, at one time, including his land and naval forces, four hundred and fifty thousand men in pay.

Q. Were these sufficient to oppose so many enemies?

A. His enemies were not yet entirely declared, nor all united. He had already armies on the frontiers of *Holland*, as also on the *Rhine*: and had sent his son, the dauphin, into *Germany*, with an army of one hundred thousand men; but the marshal *Duras* commanded in reality: while *Boufflers* headed a body of troops on this side the *Rhine*: and marshal *D'Humieres* was posted with another towards *Cologne*, to observe the motions of the enemy. *Heidelberg* and *Mentz* were taken; and the siege of *Philipsburgh* was likewise began; which was taken, in nineteen days, on the second of *November*, 1688.

Q. What other towns were taken in this campaign?

A. *Manheim* was taken in three days, and *Frankendal* in two; *Spires*, *Treves*, *Worms*, and *Oppenheim*, surrendered as soon as the *French* appeared before their gates. The king, resolving to make a desert of the *Palatinate*, sent an order to the *French* generals to reduce all to ashes; who, accordingly, gave notice to the citizens of those towns,

towns, but lately repaired, and then so flourishing; as also to the inhabitants of villages, and to the owners of fifty castles, that they must quit their habitations; though it happened then to be the dead of winter; acquainting them, that all was to be destroyed by fire and sword.

Q. Where did they begin this devastation?

A. At *Manheim*, the residence of the electors; the flames with which *Turenne* had formerly destroyed two towns and twenty villages of this country, being but sparks, in comparison of this last terrible destruction, which all *Europe* looked upon with horror. Nations, who had only hitherto blamed *Lewis* whilst they admired his ambition, now exclaimed aloud against his barbarity; highly condemning his inhuman policy.

Q. Did not the *Germanick* body endeavour to retaliate this injury?

A. Soon after, *Charles V.* duke of *Lorrain*, who had been stripped of his dominion, by *Lewis XIV.* and had never been able to regain them; who had preserved the empire, and gained several victories over the *Turks* and *Hungarians*; was sent, in conjunction with the elector of *Brandenburg*, to oppose the *French* power.

Q. What success had the duke in this enterprise?

A. He retook *Bonn* and *Mentz*, towards the latter end of the campaign, in 1689: the former held out three months and fourteen days, when the chief commander, baron *d'Asfeld*, was mortally wounded in a general assault: but the marquis *d'Uxelles*, a man of the utmost sagacity and foresight, made such excellent dispositions for the defence of *Mentz*, that his garrison was but slightly fatigued; so that, after making one-and-twenty sallies, and killing five thousand of
the

the enemy, he surrendered, at the end of seven weeks, for want of powder.

Q. What was doing in the *Netherlands* about this time?

A. The marshal d' *Humieres* was defeated there, by prince *Waldeck*, at *Valcour*, on the *Sambre*; but this overthrow, though it prejudiced the marshal's reputation, detracted little from the glory of the *French* arms. *Luxembourg* was invested with his command, and appointed general in the *Low Countries*: *Catinat* commanded in *Italy*: the marshal de *Lorges* made a good defence in *Germany*: and the duke de *Noailles* had some success in *Catalonia*: but the army in *Flanders*, commanded by *Luxembourg*; and that in *Italy*, under *Catinat*, had a continual flow of success: these two generals being, at that time, the most renowned in *Europe*.

Q. Who commanded the enemy's army in *Italy*?

A. *Victor Amadeus*, duke of *Savoy*, opposed *Catinat* there; where the *French* general, observing an error in the disposition of the duke of *Savoy*'s army, took advantage of this, and gained a compleat victory in sight of *Saluces*, near the abbey of *Stafarola*, from whence the battle was named: the *French* army losing only three hundred men; though that of the allies, under the duke of *Savoy*, lost four thousand; and after this battle, all *Savoy*, except *Montmelian*, was subjected.

Q. Whither did *Catinat* march after this victory?

A. Into *Piedmont*; where he forced the enemies trenches near *Susa*; took that place, *Villa-Franca*, *Montalban*, *Nice*, which was reckoned impregnable, *Veillane*, *Carmagnole*, and returned to *Montmelian*, which he took after an obstinate siege, in *October* 1691. From the *Alps*, *Catinat* descended to *Marseilles*, and there gained a second pitched

pitched battle, in the same year ; which was more glorious, as prince *Eugene* of *Savoy*, was one of the enemies commanders.

Q. What was done by *Luxembourg*, on that side of *France* towards the *Low countries* ?

A. He gained the battle of *Fleurus* : in which eight thousand of the enemy were made prisoners, and six thousand killed ; two hundred standards, with all their artillery and baggage, were likewise taken ; their whole army, being completely routed, and put to flight, on the thirtieth of *June*, 1690.

Q. Did not the allied forces, from a continued series of the success of the *French* generals, acknowledge their superior genius in war ?

A. No : king *William*, having vanquished his father-in-law, returned to the continent ; where he often drew more advantage from a defeat, than the *French* did from their victories : and, soon after the defeat of *Fleurus*, he appeared at the head of an army as strong as the *French*, to oppose *Luxembourg* : the two armies consisting, each, of about eighty thousand men. *Mons* was invested by *Luxembourg*, before king *William* believed the *French* had marched out of their winter quarters ; *Lewis* himself being present at the siege ; who entered the town, on the ninth day after the trenches were opened, in sight of the allied army.

Q. Did *Lewis* continue in the town after the siege ?

A. No : He immediately after returned to *Ver-sailles* ; leaving *Luxembourg* to carry on the campaign, which was finished by the battle of *Leuses*, in *September* 1691 ; wherein eighteen squadrons of the household troops of *France*, and the gendarmery, defeated seventy-five squadrons of the enemy.

my. However, *Lewis* appeared again at the siege of *Namur*, the most important place in the *Netherlands*; which he took in twenty-two days, in *June* 1692: about which time happened the battle of *Steenkirk*, famous for stratagem and valour.

Q. How did *Luxembourg* behave on this occasion?

A. At this time, he was indisposed; but the sense of his danger, rousing his strength, he immediately changed his ground, in order to give his army a more convenient situation: whereby he not only recovered the right brigade which was in the utmost disorder, but thrice rallied his forces, and thrice charged the enemy at the head of the household troops, which was done in less than two hours. The household troops and the *English* being the best in the world, a dreadful slaughter ensued; but the *French* obtained the advantage.

Q. How many men did king *William* lose in this engagement?

A. He lost seven thousand; but retired with as much order as he attacked; and though defeated, yet, always to be feared, he still kept the field.

Q. With what events was this defeat attended?

A. The duke of *Bourbon*, the prince of *Conti*, the duke de *Vendome*, with his brother, and all his friends, found the roads all lined with the populace at their return, who received them with loud acclamations, and a joy that proceeded almost to madness. The same general, with the same princes, and the same troops, attacked king *William* again, the following campaign, and defeated him at *Nerwinde*, a village not far from

from *Brussels*. The fight was extremely obstinate; there being killed on the spot, in all, twenty thousand men; twelve thousand of the allies, and eight thousand *French*; on the twenty-ninth of *July*, 1693.

Q. Did not these victories procure great glory to the arms of *France*?

A. Yes: but turned out to little advantage. *Lewis XIV.* had formerly conquered the half of *Holland*, *Flanders*, and all *Franche compte*, without fighting a single battle; but, after all these victories, he could not penetrate into the *United provinces*, nor lay siege to *Brussels*. The marshal *de Lorges* had also gained a considerable victory near *Spierbach*, taken the old duke of *Wurtemberg* prisoner, and penetrated into the heart of the country; but, after all, had been obliged to retire. The *Dauphin* had twice taken, and sacked *Heidelberg*, which the enemy as often retook: so that his highness was, at last, obliged to act only on the defensive against the imperialists.

Q. What happened, at this time, in *Italy* and *Spain*?

A. Marshal *Catinat*, after the victory of *Staffarola*, could not even save *Dauphiné* from an irruption of the duke of *Savoy*; neither was he able, after the victory of *Marseilles*, to preserve the important town of *Casal*. In *Spain*, the marshal *de Noailles* also gained a battle, near the banks of the river *Ter*, in 1694: he likewise took *Girona*, and some other considerable places; but was obliged, after his victory, to retire from before *Barcelona*. The *French*, victorious on all sides, and weakened with success, found the allies to be an *hydra*, always springing up afresh. It now began to be somewhat difficult to muster up forces in *France*,
and

and more so to raise money. The severity of the season having destroyed the fruits of the earth, brought on a famine also at this time; so that, in the midst of their rejoicings, the *French* were perishing with want and misery: finally, the death of *Luxembourg* put an end to the rapid course of the *French* victories.

Q. Did not the allies take advantage of their enemy's distress?

A. The *English* fleet bombarded *Dieppe*, *Havre-de-grace*, *St. Malo*, *Dunkirk*, and *Calais*, in *July* 1694: but *Dieppe*, being the most accessible, was the only one which suffered any considerable damage. Soon after this, *Namur* was taken by king *William*; though, at that time, it was defended by sixteen thousand men, and every moment expected to be relieved by one hundred thousand. When *Lewis* had lost *Namur*, he ordered *Brussels* to be bombarded, in *September* 1695: a fruitless revenge, equally ruinous to both *Spain* and *France*!

Q. How did *France* deal with such a number of enemies at once?

A. After sustaining some losses also in both the *Indies*, *Lewis* well knew, that, in the present circumstances, he could not be safe without a peace, or by the division of the allies; both which he soon after brought about: for the count de *Tesse*, afterwards a marshal of *France*; and marshal *Catinat*, soon concluded a treaty with the duke of *Savoy*, at *Notre Dame de Loretto*, in *July*, 1696; whither they went under pretence of a religious pilgrimage.

Q. What course did the rest of the allies take, after the duke of *Savoy* had gone off from the league?

A. Each

A. Each of them began to treat separately. The emperor began first, and accepted of the neutrality of *Italy*. The *Dutch* proposed the castle of *Ryswick*, to hold the conferences in for a general peace. The four armies which *Lewis* had then in the field hastened matters to a conclusion; for he had eighty thousand men in *Flanders*, under *Villeroi*; marshal *de Choiseul*, was at the head of forty thousand, on the banks of the *Rhine*; and *Catinat* commanded as many in *Piedmont*. The duke of *Vendome* had gained a victory in *Spain*, and taken *Barcelona*. The court of *Rome* offered her mediation, which was rejected; and *Charles XI.* king of *Sweden* was chosen for mediator. The peace, in short, was at last concluded, in *October* 1697; but not with such loftiness, nor on such advantageous conditions, as had formerly distinguished the grandeur of *Lewis XIV.*

Q. What were the principal articles of this peace?

A. 1. The king restored to the *Spaniards*, all that he had taken near the *Pyrennees*, in the late war; as he did also *Luxemburg*, *Mons*, *Ath*, and *Courtrai*, in *Flanders*. 2. He acknowledged *William* as lawful king of *England*, hitherto stiled only prince of *Orange*. 3. The decrees passed by the parliaments of *Brissac* and *Metz*, against so many sovereigns, and the re-unions made, near *Alsace*, those monuments of power, and dangerous tyranny, were abolished; and all the jurisdictions which had been seized, were also returned to their lawful proprietors: besides these concessions, *Lewis* restored *Fribourg*, *Brisac*, *Kheil*, and *Philipsburg* to the empire: he also agreed to destroy the fortifications of *Strasburg* on the *Rhine*, *Fort-Lewis*, *Traerbach*, and *Mont-Royal*. 4. And,

by this treaty, *France* restored *Lorrain*, to the family which had enjoyed it seven hundred years.

Q. Was not the year 1697 also remarkable for a victory, which prince *Eugene* obtained over the *Turks*, at *Zanta*?

A. Yes: and this defeat is still made more memorable by the death of a grand vizier, seventeen bashaws, and twenty thousand *Turks*; it also brought on the peace of *Carlowitz*, in which the *Ottoman* insolence was obliged to submit to the terms of their conquerors.

Q. What were these terms which the *Germans* imposed upon them?

A. 1. That the *Venetians* were to have the *Morea*. 2. The *Muscovites*, *Asoph*. 3. The *Poles*, *Caminieck*. 4. And the emperor, *Transylvania*.

Q. Was not all *Christendom*, and the world in general, blessed with tranquility in the seventeenth century?

A. Yes: this certainly was a remarkable period; but of short duration: for fresh commotions arose in the north between *Sweden* and *Russia*; as also in the south of *Europe*, about dividing the dominions of the *Spanish* monarch, whose death was approaching.

Q. Who were the powers which already enjoyed in idea this vast succession?

A. *Lewis XIV.* and the emperor *Leopold*, who were in the same degree of consanguinity, both grandsons of *Philip III.* for both had married daughters of *Philip IV.* the dauphin, and *Joseph*, king of the *Romans*, the emperor's son, having a double claim by the same proximity. The right of birth was in the house of *Bourbon*; for the king, and his son the dauphin, had the eldest

est daughters for their mothers : but the emperor's family asserted for their rights, first, and especially, the solemn and ratified renunciations of *Lewis XIII.* and *XIV.* to the crown of *Spain*; then the name of *Austria*, the blood of *Maximilian*, from whom *Leopold* and *Charles II.* were descended ; the almost constant union of the two *Austrian* branches, and the still more constant hatred against the *Bourbons* ; the aversion which the *Spaniards* had then to the *French* nation ; and, as their last resource, a certain policy they had in their power to govern the *Spanish* councils.

Q. In what manner were the claims of these two rivals determined ?

A. *England*, *France*, and *Holland*, projected, and made a treaty of partition, in favour of the young prince of *Bavaria* : by which treaty, *France* was to have *Sicily*, *Naples*, the province of *Guipuscoa*, and several towns : the archduke *Charles* was to have *Milan* ; and the remainder was to be given to this young prince of *Bavaria*, who was but eight years old, and whom it would be a considerable time before they would have any occasion to fear.

Q. Was this partition-treaty, ever executed by the respective powers concerned ?

A. No : it proved vain and ineffectual : for the prince of *Bavaria*, king elect, died at *Brussels*, in *February* 1699 : when the three powers beforementioned made another imaginary division of the *Spanish* monarchy ; by which they assigned to the archduke *Charles*, younger son of the emperor, what they had before given to the deceased youth. They also allotted *Milan* to the duke of *Lorrain* ; and his dutchy was to be for ever annexed to the crown of *France*.

Q. Was the king of *Spain* living when these schemes were in agitation?

A. Yes: and, being told of them, was moved with the highest indignation; for he was sensible of his declining state, and inclined to settle his whole monarchy on the archduke *Charles*: but some trifling incidents, which are generally connected with affairs of importance, contributed to bring about that great change which happened in *Europe*, and prepared the way for that revolution, by which the house of *Austria* for ever lost *Spain* and the *West-Indies*.

Q. Who were the most considerable personages that brought about this considerable revolution?

A. Cardinal *Portocarero*, and most of the grantees of *Spain*, formed themselves into a party, to prevent the dismembering of their monarchy; persuading *Charles II.* to prefer a younger grandson of *Lewis XIV.* to a prince so remote from them, and so incapable to defend them; alledging, "that the laws of *Spain*, and the welfare of all *Christendom*, required him to give the preference to the house of *Bourbon*."

Q. How did *Charles* of *Austria* behave, on receiving this intelligence?

A. He instantly signed the ruin of his own house, and the grandeur of that of *Bourbon*; languished about a month after; and then ended an obscure life, in the thirty-ninth year of his age, on the first of *October*, 1700. Thus, after two hundred years spent in wars, and fruitless negotiations, for only a part of the *Spanish* frontiers, the house of *Bourbon*, by a dash of the pen, got the whole *Spanish* monarchy, without treaties, without cabals, and without the least hope of such a succession.

Q. Had

Q. Had the king of *Spain*, in chusing for his successor the grandson of a king who had been so long his enemy, any thoughts upon the effects of a general balance?

A. It seems as if he had : for the duke of *Anjou*, grandson of *Lewis XIV.* was called to the *Spanish* succession, because he could have no expectation of inheriting the crown of *France* ; and the same testament, which, in failure of a younger son of the *Bourbon* family, nominated the archduke *Charles*, afterwards the emperor *Charles VI.* expressly mentioning, that the empire and *Spain*, must never be united in the same sovereign.

Q. Did *Lewis XIV.* adhere to the treaty of partition, or accept of the will so advantageous to his family?

A. He accepted of the testament. At which *Europe* seemed to be struck with amazement ; but unable to exert itself, when she saw the monarchy of *Spain* subject to *France*, who had been her rival for three hundred years. *Lewis* now appeared to be the happiest and most powerful monarch in the world ; being in his sixty-second year, surrounded with a numerous offspring, and one of his grandsons going to take upon him the sovereignty of *Spain*, *America*, half of *Italy*, and the *Netherlands*. The emperor, as yet, could do nothing but complain ; and king *William*, being weak and infirm, did not now appear a dangerous enemy ; besides, *Lewis* knew that *William* must have the consent of his parliament.

Q. How did the king of *France* act on this occasion.

A. He sent over into *England* six millions of livres ; by the strength of which he flattered himself he should be able to get a majority

of votes in his interest. *William*, and the *Dutch*, not having sufficient strength to declare themselves, wrote to *Philip V.* as lawful king of *Spain*: so that, from *Lisbon* to *Antwerp*, and from the *Danube* to *Naples*, all seemed in the interest of the *Bourbon* family.

Q. Was not king *William* still an enemy to the grandeur of *Lewis XIV.*?

A. Yes: even to his grave; promising the emperor to arm *England* and *Holland* against him. He likewise gained *Denmark* in his interest; and, in *September*, 1700, signed a treaty, which had, for some time, been concerted against the house of *Bourbon*.

Q. Did not the *French* monarch dread the consequence of this alliance?

A. *James* died at *St. Germain's*, about this time, and *Lewis* immediately acknowledged the prince of *Wales*, as lawful king of *England*: but, had he not taken this step, its very probable the *English* parliament would not have meddled between the houses of *Bourbon* and *Austria*.

Q. Was not this acknowledgement of a king, who had been proscribed by them, looked upon as an insult by the *British* nation?

A. Yes: they looked upon it as affecting to be arbitrary in *Europe*, and which disposed the nation to give *William* whatever subsidies he demanded. Hereupon the emperor *Leopold* began the War in *Italy*, in the spring of the year 1701: and king *William* was to have headed the allied army in the beginning of the year 1702, had not death prevented his designs: but he was succeeded by queen *Anne*; who, as soon as she ascended the throne, entered into the measures of king *William*; though she had been in open rupture with him when living: which measures were

were certainly most agreeable to the people; and, in *England*, a prince must comply with them.

Q. What were the dispositions made in *England* and *Holland*, in order to settle the archduke *Charles* upon the throne of *Spain*?

A. *Holland* was to maintain two hundred thousand troops, to be employed in the field, or to be kept in garrison; *England* was to furnish forty thousand; and the emperor twenty-four thousand, exclusive of the assistance of the empire.

Q. Were not these grand armies sufficient to alarm the court of *Lewis XIV*?

A. People of penetration there already foresaw a revolution; but the king, now above sixty years old, and living more retired, could not so well distinguish the characters of men.

Q. What course did *Lewis* take to obviate the designs of these formidable allies?

A. *Madam Maintenon*, by her interest, having made *Chamillard* superintendant of the finances; honours and military rewards were lavished in the most inconsiderate manner. In the year 1693, the king first created knights of *St. Lewis*; an order instituted on purpose to raise emulation in his officers; but the crosses of this order were sold as soon as *Chamillard* began his ministry; and they might be bought at the war-office by boys for fifty crowns: so that military discipline, which is the very soul of an army, and which had been so strictly preserved by *Louvois*, was now shamefully neglected.

Q. Who was the first general of the allied forces that lowered the superiority of *France*?

A. A *Frenchman*; for so we must reckon prince *Eugene*, although a grandson of *Charles Emanuel* duke of *Savoy*: he made a descent upon *Italy*, at the head of thirty thousand men; hav-

ing a full power to pursue what measures he thought proper ; where he first attacked the post of *Carpi*, defended by monsieur *St. Fremont*, who was driven from that important post. After this success, the *Germans* became masters of all the country betwixt the *Adige* and the *Adda* ; they even penetrated into the territory of *Bresciano* ; and marshal *Catinat* retired behind the *Oglio*.

Q. How did *Catinat* answer for this conduct ?

A. The courtiers, who hoped to supplant him, called it a reproach to the *French* name ; and the marshal *Villeroi* undertook to retrieve the honour of the nation ; who accordingly procured the command in *Italy*, and the marshal *Catinat* was obliged to serve under him.

Q. Had the *French* army any better success under monsieur *Villeroi* ?

A. His first order was, that they should attack prince *Eugene* posted at *Ghiari*, near the *Oglio* ; in which attack *Catinat* was wounded, though he conducted the retreat, and afterwards came to *Versailles* to give an account of his conduct to the king, without complaining of any person.

Q. How did *Villeroi* carry on the war, after *Catinat's* retirement ?

A. *Eugene* always kept the superiority over him ; and at last, in the midst of winter, in the year 1702, one night when the marshal was asleep, in the utmost security in *Cremona*, he was suddenly taken prisoner, and conducted out of the town ; not being able to imagine the cause of this surprizing event. After this, prince *Eugene* entered the town: when the *French* officers and soldiers thronged into the streets and public places, in the utmost confusion, some half-armed, and others half naked; without a commander, and without

without order ; fighting in the greatest distraction from street to street, and from one square to another : nevertheless, prince *Eugene*, after having fought a whole day, and always keeping the possession of the gate through which he entered, at length, retreated ; carrying with him the marshal *Villeroi*, and several general officers, prisoners.

Q. What was done by the *French* court after the loss of this general ?

A. The duke of *Vendome*, grandson of *Henry IV.* had the command of the *French* forces, and carried on the war against *Eugene*. After many battles and sieges, secret intelligence was brought to *Versailles*, that the duke of *Savoy*, who had been disgusted by *Villeroi*, and was father-in-law to the duke of *Burgundy*, and *Philip V.* had quitted the *Bourbon* interest : and, scarce had *France* lost this ally, before another courier arrived, with intelligence, that the king of *Portugal* had declared against her.

Q. Who commanded the allied army in *Flanders* at this time ?

A. *Churchill*, earl, and afterwards duke of *Marlborough* ; the most fatal man to the grandeur of *France*, that had appeared for many ages. He was an indefatigable warrior ; and, at the same time, acted the part of an able negotiator. He, *Eugene*, and the grand pensionary *Heinsius*, concerted measures, which put the springs of half *Europe* in motion against the house of *Bourbon* ; and the *French* ministry was then too weak to make any long resistance against such united force. *Chamillard*, on the contrary, being no politician, no warrior, nor even well versed in the public revenues, was greatly unequal to the part of a prime minister.

Q. What success had *Churchill* in this campaign?

A. The *French* monarch sent against him his grandson the duke of *Burgundy*, and the marshal *de Boufflers*: but, the former having been forced to retreat by the excellent marches of the *English*; *Boufflers*, now remained alone a spectator of the success of *Marlborough*, who took *Vendome*, *Ruremonde*, and *Liege*, always advancing, and never for a moment quitting his superiority: while the prince of *Baden*, at the head of the imperialists, took *Landau*, after a defence of four months by *Melac*: but he was afterwards attacked by the *French* army, near *Friedlingen*, commanded by the marshal *Villars*, which gave name to the battle; wherein the *Germans* lost three thousand men, and all their artillery; after which the fort of *Friedlingen* capitulated; and *Villars* joined the elector of *Bavaria*.

Q. Whither did this combined army march?

A. The count *de Styrum*, at the head of twenty thousand men, was then going to join the formidable army of the prince of *Baden*, which *Villars* was determined to prevent; who, accordingly, came to an engagement in the plains of *Hochstet*, near *Donawert*, on the twentieth of *September* 1703, and gained the victory.

Q. What was the loss of the imperialists in this battle?

A. Three thousand men were killed, four thousand taken prisoners, and they likewise lost all their artillery: whereby the elector of *Bavaria* got possession of *Ausbourg*; and, the road to *Vienna* being laid open, it was debated in the emperor's council, whether he should quit his capital: nor was his consternation blameable; for the duke of *Burgundy*, with the marshals *Tallard* and

and *Vauban*, had made himself master of old *Brisac*; and *Tallard* had not only re-taken *Landau*, but also defeated the prince of *Hesse*, afterwards king of *Sweden*, near *Spire*, when he came to relieve that city.

Q. Where did *Villars* go, after gaining the two battles aforementioned?

A. His haughtiness rendered him disagreeable to the elector of *Bavaria*; and, though in all probability he would have overpowered the emperor, the elector was so unfortunate as to demand another marshal of *France*; whereupon *Villars* was sent into the *Cevennes*, to quell an insurrection among the country people.

Q. What success had the duke of *Marlborough* in *Germany*?

A. He returned to the *Netherlands*, in the beginning of the year 1703, where he had taken *Bonne*, the residence of the elector of *Cologne*; from thence he proceeded to *Huy*, which he took, as also *Limbourg*; and made himself master of all the circle of the lower *Rhine*.

Q. Was the Marshal *Villeroi*, who had been taken prisoner by *Eugene* at *Cremona*, as yet set at liberty?

A. Yes: and commanded in *Flanders* against the duke of *Marlborough*; but was not more fortunate against him, than he had been against the other. It is probable, the house of *Austria* had been entirely ruined, had it not been for the *English* general; for the elector of *Bavaria* had made himself master of *Passau*, and thirty thousand *French* had covered the country on the other side of the *Danube*; while parties made frequent incursions into *Austria*.

Q. What measures were concerted by the duke in this extremity?

A. About

A. About this time, prince *Eugene* hastened out of *Italy* to command the army in *Germany*, and the duke of *Marlbrough* met him at *Heilbron*; the latter having carried with him ten thousand *English* infantry, and twenty-three squadrons of horse, with which he hastened to the banks of the *Danube*, opposite to the elector of *Bavaria's* lines; where, after a contest of two hours, on the second of *July* 1704, *Marlbrough* forced his way, at the head of three *English* battallions, and defeated the *French* and *Bavarians*, consisting of sixteen thousand men: after which, he took *Donawert*, passed the *Danube*, and laid all *Bavaria* under contribution: while marshal *Tallard*, at the head of thirty thousand men, marched another way to oppose him, and joined the elector: but *Eugene* arrived about the same time, and joined *Marlbrough*.

Q. Of how many men did these two armies consist?

A. The *French*, including the *Bavarians*, had sixty thousand; the allies about fifty-two thousand; and a bloody battle ensued. The battle began, between twelve and one o'clock, on the second of *August* 1704. Marshal *Tallard* commanded the right wing of the *French*; and the elector, with *Marfin*, the left. *Marlbrough* commanded the right wing of the allied army, and *Eugene* the left.

Q. What loss did each army sustain in this engagement?

A. The allies and conquerors lost five thousand, and had eight thousand wounded: but the *French* army was entirely destroyed; of sixty thousand men, who had been so long victorious, there remained no more than twenty thousand; for about twelve thousand of the *French* were killed, and fourteen

fourteen thousand made prisoners. All their artillery, a vast number of their standards and colours, their tents and field colours, were taken by the enemy, together with *Tallard* the French general, and one thousand two hundred officers of distinction. Such was that celebrated battle known by the name of *Hochstet*, in *France*; of *Plen-theim*, in *Germany*; and of *Blenheim*, in *England*.

Q. What was the consequence of this glorious victory?

A. In less than a month, near three hundred miles of territory were possessed by the conquerors. *Bavaria*, subjected to the emperor, felt all the enraged rigour of the *Austrian* government, and the rapacious barbarity of a victorious soldiery. Amazement and consternation now seized the court of *Versailles*, hitherto accustomed to prosperity. The news of the defeat came amidst the grand rejoicings for the birth of a great grandson of *Lewis XIV.* but, nobody daring to tell the king the truth, madam *Maintenon* was obliged at last to take upon her the office, to inform his majesty, that he was no longer invincible.

Q. What other important consequences attend this victory?

A. The allies had now a free communication between the *Danube*, and the *Rhine*, which they accordingly passed, and entered *Alsace*: while prince *Lewis* of *Baden* took *Landau*, and *Traerbach*; the former on the nineteenth, and the latter on the twenty-third, of *November*.

Q. What efforts were made by *Lewis* in *Germany*, to oppose the victorious *Marlbrough*?

A. The broken remains of the army were re-assembled, the garrisons were drained, and the militia ordered to take the field; while the minister

nister borrowed money from all hands; so that, at last, an army was mustered up to open the campaign of 1705, and marshal *Villars* was recalled to take upon him the command; who, upon his arrival, found himself near *Treves*, with an inferior force, opposite to the *English* general: but, the prince of *Baden* not coming up in proper time, the duke of *Marlborough* decamped, and returned into *Flanders*.

Q. How stood matters now with regard to the succession to the crown of *Spain*?

A. *Philip V.* and, the archduke *Charles*, equally expected to enjoy it: the former building his hopes on the power of his grandfather, and the favour of most of the *Spaniards*: the latter depending upon the assistance of the *English*, and the party he had in *Catalonia* and *Arragon*.

Q. Was not the power of *England* fully displayed on this occasion?

A. It certainly was; for the nation, though but little interested in the quarrel, furnished the *Austrian* prince with two hundred transport ships, thirty men of war, joined to ten *Dutch* vessels, nine thousand troops, and money to conquer the kingdom of *Spain*.

Q. What exploits did the *British* admiral perform with this armament?

A. Sir *George Rooke* first took *Gibraltar*, in July, 1704; which, not without reason, had been thought impregnable; and, on the thirteenth of *August*, engaged count *Toulouse*, the *French* admiral, in sight of *Malaga*; who retired with honour, and without damage; yet this fight, was the final period of the marine power of *Lewis XIV.* The marine now sunk again into that weak condition, whence it had been raised; in

the same manner as many other grand things, which had their rise and fall, during his reign.

Q. What was done by the *English* fleet, after these successes?

A. In six weeks after, they conquered *Valencia* and *Catalonia* for the archduke *Charles*; and took *Barcelona*. To the loss of *Barcelona*, there was added another mortification, by an attempt to retake it, which miscarried; *Philip V.* though he had the majority of *Spain* in his interest, having neither generals, nor engineers, and but few soldiers.

Q. In what manner was the siege of *Barcelona* formed?

A. The count de *Toulouse* blocked up the harbour with twenty-five ships; while marshal *Tesse* formed the siege with thirty-one squadrons, and thirty-seven battallions: but, as soon as the *English* fleet appeared, the *French* admiral stood away, and *Tesse* raised the siege with the utmost precipitation.

Q. Did the grandson of *Lewis* maintain his right after these losses?

A. Purely by the affection of the *Castilian* nation, who persisted in their choice; and, from a principle of pride, continued in their fidelity.

Q. How were affairs conducted in *Italy*?

A. Successfully enough; for *Lewis* had sufficient revenge on the duke of *Savoy*. *Vendome* repulsed *Eugene* at the battle of *Cassano*, and gained a complete victory at *Cassinato* in his absence. So that *Turin* only now remained to be taken, which was invested.

Q. What happened in *Germany* and *Flanders*?

A. Towards *Germany*, marshal *Villars* drove before him the prince of *Baden*. In *Flanders*, *Villeroi* commanded an army of eighty thousand men, and was desirous to engage *Marlborough*, who,

who, on Whitsunday, 1706, began the attack, and gained so complete a victory that the *French* in this battle lost twenty thousand men, with the glory of the nation; while the confederates lost only about two thousand five hundred men. The allies had before gained all *Bavaria* and *Cologne* by the battle of *Hochstet*; and, by this of *Ramillies*, they got all the *Spanish Flanders* into their possession.

Q. How did the victorious *Marlbrough* act after this engagement?

A. He entered *Antwerp* and *Brussels*; took *Ostend*; and *Menin* surrendered to him.

Q. How was *Villeroi* received by the king after this defeat?

A. The grand monarch, instead of reproaching him, only said, " *Monfieur mareschal*, the times " are not favourable to us now." However, he immediately recalled the duke of *Vendome* from *Italy*, to send him into *Flanders*, if possible, to repair this misfortune.

Q. Was the city of *Turin* as yet taken?

A. No: the duke of *Feuillade* besieged it with forty-six squadrons and one hundred battallions; *Chamillard*, his father-in law, who loved him tenderly, having spared nothing to succeed in the attempt. The very imagination would be startled at the detail of the preparations for this siege; but all proved fruitless; for *Eugene* found means to join the duke of *Savoy* near *Asti*, then attacked the besiegers intrenchments, and forced them, on the seventh of *September*, 1706; when all the baggage, ammunition, and the military chest were taken. The marshal of *Marsin*, being wounded in the leg, was made prisoner; and a surgeon belonging to the duke of *Savoy* cut it off, but he died in a few minutes.

Q. Is

Q. Is there nothing farther remarkable of this general?

A. Before his departure from *Versailles*, he represented to the king, that it would be absolutely necessary to march against the enemy, if they should advance to relieve *Turin*: but *Chamillard*, intimidated by former defeats, carried it, that they should not offer, but wait for a battle; and this order, given at court, caused the defeat of sixty thousand men: thus, in a short time, they lost the duchies of *Milan* and *Mantua*, *Piedmont*, and at last the whole kingdom of *Naples*.

Q. What were the consequences of these defeats suffered by *France* and *Spain*?

A. The duke of *Savoy* now had it in his power to penetrate into *France*. *Scotland*, by an union, now became a province of *England*, and was become an accession to the power of her ancient rival. In *Germany*, *Landau* was lost, and *Alsace* was thereby exposed. *Provence* was threatened with an invasion by sea and land, and *Flanders* was lost. Yet, notwithstanding all these misfortunes, *France* still remained untouched; and, in this unsuccessful war, she had as yet lost nothing but her conquests; though, of all those formidable fleets, which *Lewis* had raised, there remained scarce thirty five ships.

Q. Did no other misfortunes add to lower the greatness of the *French* monarch?

A. Yes; the *Portuguese*, assisted by the *English*, took all the places they invested, and advanced into *Estremadura*, under the command of a *Frenchman* created a peer of *England*, by the title of lord *Galloway*, who was formerly the count *de Ruigni*: whilst the troops of *France* were headed by the duke of *Berwick*, an *English* nobleman;

nobleman ; but they could not stop the progress of the conquerors.

Q. What passed between the competitors for the crown of *Spain* ?

A. In 1706, *Philip V.* remained in *Pampelona*, uncertain of his destiny : while *Charles* was increasing his party, and strength in *Catalonia* ; having made himself master of *Arragon*, *Valencia*, *Carthagen*a, and part of *Granada*. The *English* kept *Gibraltar* in their own possession ; and they took, for *Charles*, *Minorca*, *Ivica*, and *Alicant*. The roads to *Madrid* being now laid open, *Galloway* entered the metropolis without any opposition, where he ordered the archduke *Charles* to be proclaimed king ; and he likewise sent a small detachment to do the same at *Toledo*.

Q. Did not the *Spaniards* exert themselves on this occasion ?

A. It now appeared how difficult it is to impose a king upon a people against their inclination. The *Portuguese*, *English*, and *Austrians*, in *Spain*, were harrassed every where ; while *Lewis* guarded all the coasts on the ocean and mediterranean, by placing the militia there : though he had an army in *Flanders*, another at *Straßbourg*, a third in *Navarre*, and a fourth in *Roussillon*, yet he sent a reinforcement to marshal *Berwick* in *Castile*, who with these troops, aided by the *Spaniards*, gained the famous and important battle of *Almanza*, on the 5th of *April* 1707 ; whereby *Philip* came into the possession of almost all the principal places.

Q. What was done by the marshal *Villars* in *Germany* ?

A. He retrieved the honour lost at *Hachstet* ; forced the lines of *Stolhoffen* on the other side of the

the *Rhine*, and dispersed all the enemy's troops, on the 22d of *May* 1707 : which rapid success, gave the *French* some respite on the *German* frontiers : but all was lost in *Italy* ; and *Provence*, with *Dauphine*, were upon the point of being lost also ; for *Eugene*, and the duke of *Savoy*, had already entered by the narrow passage of *Tenda* ; while *Toulon* was besieged by the *English* with great vigour.

Q. How did *Lewis* extricate himself from these dangers ?

A. He sent a detachment from the army, commanded by *Villars*, to succour *Toulon* ; and a sickness prevailing, at the same time, in the enemy's camp, the siege was raised, *Provence* delivered, and *Dauphine* freed from danger. The Pretender also now appeared on the coast of *Scotland* ; but, the signals agreed upon not being given, all that the Chevalier *de Forbin* could do, was, to carry him back to *Dunkirk*.

Q. Were not the affairs of *France* now declining daily ?

A. *Lewis* thought so ; for which reason, at the beginning of the year 1708, he sent his grandson the duke of *Burgundy* into *Flanders*, to head the army ; vainly imagining that the presence of the apparent heir to the crown, would inspire the soldiery with emulation, which began to languish.

Q. What was the character of this royal general ?

A. He had a firm and intrepid soul ; was pious, just, and philosophical. He had been instructed in the art of war ; but looked upon it rather as the scourge of the human race, and an unhappy necessity, than as a source of true glory. This philosophical prince was sent against the duke.

duke of *Marlborough*, and the duke of *Vendôme* was given him as an assistant.

Q. What number of forces had the duke of *Burgundy*?

A. *France*, though all *Europe* looked upon her as quite exhausted, furnished him with an army of near one hundred thousand men; whilst the allies had only eighty thousand. He had likewise the advantage of intelligence; by which means he easily got possession of *Ghent* and *Ypres*; but his misconduct rendered these advantages fruitless; for, on the 11th of *July* 1708, he was routed at *Oudenard*, by *Marlborough* and *Eugene*, who killed a great number of the *French*, and made six thousand prisoners.

Q. Where did the *French* army retire in this disorder?

A. Under *Ghent*, *Tournay*, and *Ypres*; where they suffered *Eugene*, without any molestation, to besiege and take *Lisle*, in four months, to the great astonishment of all *Europe*; who looked upon the duke of *Burgundy* as more able to besiege *Eugene* and *Marlborough*, than these generals were to invest *Lisle*: soon after, the army which had beheld this siege, allowed *Ghent* and *Bruges* to be taken, and all the other important posts, one after another.

Q. What followed this indolence and inactivity in the duke of *Burgundy*?

A. *France* was now reduced as low as *Rome*, and was in a more dangerous situation; all her resources being exhausted, and her credit entirely sunk. The people, who had idolized *Lewis* in his prosperity, now, in his misfortunes, murmured against him; but the merchants of *St. Malo*, who went to *Peru*, having brought from thence thirty millions of money, lent half this sum

sum to the king, when he wanted it to pay his troops. The war had ruined the state, and the merchants retrieved it. Of which truly public spirit, we have lately had a remarkable instance in *Great-Britain*.

Q. Did not *Lewis*, in such distressed circumstances, make some advances towards a peace?

A. At the beginning of the year 1709, he sent his principal minister, the marquis *de Torci Colbert*, with the president *Rouille*, to the *Hague*, with instructions for bringing about this good purpose: they had first a conference at *Antwerp*, with the two burgomasters, *Buis* and *Vanderhussen*, who spoke with the air of conquerors; treating the ministers of one of the most haughty monarchs, with all that haughtiness and contempt with which the *Dutch* had been treated, in 1672.

Q. What was the consequence of this negotiation?

A. The *Dutch* wanted to extend their territory in *Flanders*, not only at the expence of *France*, but likewise of *Austria*; so that the marquis *de Torci* immediately departed, and reported to the king the haughty demands of his enemies. *Lewis*, thereupon, justified his conduct to his subjects, and sent them a circular letter; wherein he set forth, the necessity he was under, of obliging them still to support the burthen of a war; wherein he also excited their indignation, their sense of honour, and likewise their pity: for prince *Eugene*, the duke of *Marlborough*, and the *Dutch* pensionary *Heinsius*, were unanimous for continuing the war.

Q. How did *Lewis* manage his affairs, after having experienced the insolence of his enemies?

A. He instantly made preparations for another effort

effort in *Flanders*. The very famine, which depopulated the country, proved a resource in war; for those who wanted bread became soldiers; and though there were great quantities of land left untilled, an army was raised. *Marlborough* had already taken *Tournay*, while *Eugene* covered the siege, and these two generals now marched to invest *Mons*. Marshal *Villars* advanced to oppose them; having with him *Boufflers*, who, though his senior, had solicited to serve under him.

Q. How did these two great men succeed in this attempt?

A. As soon as they advanced to prevent the siege of *Mons*, the allies marched to attack them, near the wood of *Blangies*, and the village of *Malplaquet*; which brought on a battle, the 11th of September.

Q. Of what number of forces did the two armies consist?

A. Each party had about eighty thousand; but that of the allies was superior by about forty-two battalions. The *French* had eighty pieces of cannon, and the allies one hundred and forty. The duke of *Marlborough* commanded the right wing of the confederates, which consisted of the *English* and *German* troops in the pay of *England*: prince *Eugene* was in the centre; and *Tilli*, with count *Nassau*, headed the left wing composed of the *Dutch* troops. Marshal *Villars* took upon him the command of the left wing of the *French*, and appointed *Boufflers* to command the right; having intrenched his army in a hurry, as he was inferior in numbers; which seemed extremely suitable to the present circumstances of *France*, when a total defeat would have reduced her to the utmost extremity.

Q. What was the event of this engagement?

A. There

A. There have been few battles, for several ages, that continued longer, were more eagerly contested, and none more bloody. The left wing of the enemy, where the *Dutch* fought, was almost entirely destroyed; *Marlborough*, on the right, made, and withstood the greatest efforts. Marshal *Villars* drew off some part of his centre to oppose *Marlborough*, and at that very juncture, the centre was attacked; the intrenchments which covered it, being carried instantly. The marshal hastened from the left wing to his centre, where he was wounded, and the battle lost.

Q. How many men were killed on each side in this battle?

A. The *French* lost about eight thousand: but the allies had about twenty thousand killed and wounded; for, their centre having been forced, and the two wings broken through, the vanquished had made the greatest slaughter. Marshal *Boufflers* made a retreat in good order, being assisted by the prince *de Tingri-Montmorency*, afterwards duke of *Luxembourg*: when the *French* army retired between *Quenoi* and *Valenciennes*; carrying with them several colours and standards taken from the enemy. However, the conquerors besieged *Mons*, which was taken in *August* 1709, and given up to the *Dutch*; as were also *Tournay* and *Liste*.

Q. Were not these repeated defeats, and losses, sufficient to humble the pride of *Lewis*, and make him sue for peace in a more suppliant manner?

A. He did so; for he offered to acknowledge the archduke as king of *Spain*; to give no assistance to his grandson; to give four cautionary towns; to deliver up *Straßburg* and *Brisac*; to renounce the sovereignty of *Alsace*, and only to keep the government thereof; to demolish all
the

the forts between *Bale* and *Philipsbourg*; to fill up the harbour of *Dunkirk*, and entirely erase the fortifications of that place, which had been formidable for so considerable a time; as also to give up to the states general *Lisle*, *Tournay*, *Ypres*, *Menin*, *Furnes*, *Conde*, and *Maubeuge*.

Q. Did the allies accept of these articles?

A. The allies, by way of triumph, pretended they wanted to examine more narrowly into the submission of the grand monarch: they allowed his plenipotentiaries to come to the little village of *Gertrudenburg*, in the beginning of the year 1710; but these ambassadors were rather confined there than admitted to treaty; being insulted by scurrilous libels; all which were composed by *French* refugees, who were greater enemies to the glory of *Lewis XIV.* than *Marlborough* or *Eugene*.

Q. What was done by the confederates whilst they treated the king in this haughty manner?

A. They took *Douay*, *Bethune*, *Aire*, and *St. Venant*: the earl of *Stair* even proposing to send detachments to the gates of *Paris*. In the interim, *Gui de Staremberg*, the *German* general, gained a complete victory, near *Saragossa*, on the 20th of *August* 1710, over the army in which *Philip* placed his greatest hopes. Thus, *Lewis* was equally defeated abroad, and at home; by sea, and land; and in his public negotiations, as well as private intrigues; for he could not, without the greatest difficulty, defend himself towards *Savoy*, or the *Rhine*, and especially in *Flanders*, where the war was carried on with the utmost vigour.

Q. Did *Lewis* do nothing on the side of *Spain*, after the defeat near *Saragossa*?

A. The king of *Spain's* council, and most of the

the nobles, wrote in a body to him, intreating he would send to them the duke of *Vendome*; and this prince, who had retired to *Anet*, accordingly departed.

Q. What success had he in this campaign?

A. On his arrival in *Spain*, he wanted money; but this was supplied by the boroughs, cities, and religious houses. The whole nation was seized with a spirit of enthusiasm; and the duke, resolving not to suffer this ardour to cool, pursued the conquerors, brought back the king to *Madrid*, and obliged the enemy to retire to *Portugal*. He still followed them, forded the *Tagus*, and took general *Stanhope* prisoner at *Briuega*, with five thousand *English*; he came up with general *Staremburg*, gave him battle, and gained so complete a victory, that, in the space of four months, this prince, who, at his arrival, found every thing in the most desperate situation, restored perfect tranquility, and settled for ever the crown of *Spain* on *Philip*.

Q. Were not the allies astonished at this great revolution?

A. Another, less distinguished, though not less decisive, was now forming in *England*. The duchess of *Marlborough*, having, by her haughtiness, disgusted the queen, who began to look out for another favourite, and fixed her eyes upon lady *Masham*; the tories seized this opportunity to deliver the queen from her domestic slavery; to humble the power of *Marlborough*; to make a change in the ministry; to conclude a peace; and, if possible, to restore the *Stuart* family to the throne.

Q. Was the queen prevailed on to remove *Marlborough* from the command?

A. No: he still continued, in 1711, to harass
O France;

France; notwithstanding his disgrace at court. Proposals for peace from *France* were secretly offered at *London*: but the new ministry durst not yet accept of them.

Q. What memorable events happened about this time in *Germany*?

A. The emperor *Joseph* died on the 17th of *April* 1711. who left all the dominions of the *Austrian* family, the empire of *Germany*, and his pretensions on *Spain*, and *America*, to his brother *Charles*; who was, a few months after, elected emperor of the *Romans*.

Q. Did not this unexpected event cause great alterations in the *British* court?

A. The queen was emboldened by it; the eyes of a great part of the nation were opened; a new parliament called; and the queen was at liberty to make preparations for the peace of *Europe*: but, while negotiations for a peace were transacting in the cabinet, *M. Marlborough* was carrying on hostilities in the field: where he forced the lines which marshal *Villars* had drawn from *Montreuil* to *Valenciennes*; he took *Bouchain*, and advanced as far as *Quesnoy*, in *September* 1711; from whence to *Paris* there was hardly a single fort to oppose him, when he was dismissed from his command by the artifice of his enemies.

Q. Were the negotiations for a peace still carrying on at *London*?

A. They now became public; and the queen sent the earl of *Strafford* ambassador to *Holland*, to oblige the *Dutch* to name plenipotentiaries, and to receive those of *France*, at *Utretcht*; where these ministers came now to treat on more equal terms, than before at *Gertrudembourg*.

Q. Did

Q. Did the hostilities in *Flanders* cease, during these negotiations?

A. Marshal *Villars*, having retired behind his lines, covered *Arras* and *Cambray*. Prince *Eugene* took the town of *Quesnoy*, and extended in the country an army of one hundred thousand men. The *Dutch* had made an extraordinary effort, and this year furnished beyond their contingent. Queen *Anne* could not yet openly disengage herself; and she had sent the duke of *Ormond* with twelve thousand *English* to prince *Eugene's* army; but with orders not to fight.

Q. How far were the negotiations between *France* and *England* now advanced?

A. A suspension of arms was already agreed upon, and *Lewis XIV.* had put *Dunkirk* into the hands of the *English*, as a surety that he would perform his engagement. The duke of *Ormond* retired towards *Ghent*, with the *English* troops, and would have drawn off those in the *English* pay; but he could only procure twelve squadrons of *Holstein*, and a regiment of *Leige* to follow him: the troops of *Brandenbourg*, the *Palatinate*, *Saxony*, *Hesse*, and *Denmark*, still remaining with *Eugene*, and were paid by the *Dutch*; even the elector of *Hanover*, who was to succeed the queen, left his troops with the allies.

Q. Was prince *Eugene*, when deprived of the *English* forces, still superior to the *French*?

A. Yes; by twenty thousand men; he was so too by his situation, by his plenty of every thing, and by a course of victories for nine years; so that marshal *Villars* could not hinder him from besieging *Landrecy*: while a detachment of imperialists ravaged *Champagne*, and penetrated even to the gates of *Rheims*.

Q. Did not this cause a general alarm at *Versailles*, and throughout the kingdom?

A. To add to these misfortunes, a year after, happened the death of the king's only son: the duke and dutchess of *Burgundy*, being taken off in a few months after, were carried to their graves in the same hearse; and the *French* now expected more misery, than they had before seen glory and grandeur.

Q. Was *Landrecy* in a condition to hold out long against *Eugene*?

A. No; but a short time: and now it was debated in council at *Versailles*, whether the king should not retire to *Chambord*. Upon this occasion, his majesty told marshal *de Harcourt*, "That, in case of any new misfortune, he
" would summon together all the nobility of
" the kingdom; and, though in his seventy-
" fourth year, would lead them on against the
" enemy."

Q. How was *Lewis* himself, and the whole kingdom, delivered from these perplexities?

A. By a mistake of prince *Eugene*, and a stratagem of the marshal *Villars*; the latter of whom marched to *Denain*, with his army, in five columns, on the 24th of *July* 1712, and forced the intrenchments of general *Albemarle*, defended by seventeen battalions, who were all killed or taken; the general surrendering himself a prisoner, together with two princes of *Nassau*, a prince of *Holstein*, a prince of *Anhalt*, and all the officers. *Eugene*, coming to his assistance, also lost most of his men, and was obliged to return to his camp, after being a witness of this defeat.

Q. What were the consequences of this defeat?

A. *Villars*

A. *Villars* had now the superiority. The enemy, disconcerted, raised the siege of *Landrecy*, and suffered *Douay*, *Quesnoy*, and *Bouchain*, to be retaken. After which, the army of *Eugene* retreated; having lost fifty battalions; forty of which, from the battle of *Denain* to the end of the campaign, had been taken prisoners; and the most signal victory could not have produced greater advantages.

Q. Did not this progress of the *French* arms hasten the peace of *Utrecht*?

A. All the articles included in this treaty were signed on the 30th of *March* 1713; but the emperor, either through the obstinacy of prince *Eugene*, or the bad policy of his council, refused to enter into these general negotiations for a peace: he might certainly have had *Landau*, and, perhaps, *Strasbourg*, had he first come readily into the measures of queen *Anne*; but he remained obstinate for war, and had nothing.

Q. Where did *Villars* march, after having secured what remained of the *French-Flanders*?

A. Towards the *Rhine*; where, after having made himself master of *Spires*, *Worms*, and all the adjacent country, he took *Landau*; when the emperor might have preserved it by peace. He forced the intrenchments which prince *Eugene* had drawn in the *Brisgaw*; and defeated marshal *Vaubonne* within his lines. He likewise besieged and took *Fribourg*, the metropolis of upper *Austria*.

Q. Did not this make the emperor sensible, that he could not oppose *France* without *England* and *Holland*?

A. Yes, certainly; for he resolved, when too late, to make peace; and marshal *Villars*, having concluded the war, had likewise the honour

of concluding another peace at *Radstat* with prince *Eugene*, on the 6th of *March* 1714. In this treaty, no mention was made of the rights which the emperor pretended to the monarchy of *Spain*; *Lewis XIV.* still kept *Straßbourg* and *Landau*, which he had before proposed to resign, together with *Hunninguen*, and new *Brisat*, which he had offered to demolish; and he still retained the sovereignty of *Alsace*, which formerly he would have renounced: and, what was most honourable, he got the electors of *Bavaria* and *Cologne* re-established in their dominions and honours.

Q. Though it must be owned that *France*, in all her treaties with the emperors, always protected the rights of the princes and states of the empire; from what powers or motives did these friendly negotiations proceed?

A. *France* received the law from *England*, and, in her turn, gave it to the empire: but, in the mean time, each sovereign took possession of their new rights. The duke of *Savoy* got himself acknowledged in *Sicily*, without consulting the emperor, who in vain complained: the *Dutch* seized upon the barrier towns: *Lewis* ordered the harbour of *Dunkirk* to be filled up, the citadel and all the fortifications to be destroyed; while the *Dunkirkers* sent a deputation, to plore the clemency of queen *Anne*; but the queen refused their request; which was a great mortification to their sovereign.

Q. In what manner did *Lewis* repair this damage?

A. Sometime after, he caused the canal of *Mardyke* to be enlarged; and, by means of the sluices, an harbour was soon made, said to be equal to that of *Dunkirk*; on which account
the

the earl of *Stair*, ambassador from *England*, made warm remonstrances, which were yielded to, instead of being treated with disregard ; for all that had been done at *Mardyke*, was soon after demolished, during the regency, and the treaty fulfilled in every particular.

Q. How did *Philip V.*, king of *Spain*, though now disengaged of his competitor, reduce the *Catalonians* under his subjection ?

A. He was not able to do this alone ; but *Lewis*, who, towards the close of the war, could neither furnish his grandson with ships or soldiers against *Charles*, now supplied him with both against his revolted subjects. The port of *Barcelona* was blocked up with a *French* fleet, and marshal *Berwick* besieged it by land. The besieged fought from street to street, and more than five hundred ecclesiasticks lost their lives in arms, at this siege ; however, the town was taken ; and the inhabitants only obtained their lives and properties ; for most of their privileges were taken away. This fury of the *Catalans*, which had not inspired them when *Charles VI.* was among them, but transported them to such a degree, when destitute of assistance, was the last flame of that fire, which had laid waste the most beautiful part of *Europe*, for so considerable a time, occasioned by the will of *Charles II.* king of *Spain*.

Q. What happened to *Lewis*, after the treaty of *Utrecht* ?

A. Nothing but misfortunes : of all his numerous legitimate issue, he found only one grandson to succeed him ; who was an infant in his cradle, and at the point of death : though the king suppressed his grief in public, the reflection of so many miseries pierced him to the heart in secret, and threw him into convulsions.

Q. Was *Lewis* never able to see the rays of his former fortune?

A. No; the remainder of his life was very melancholy: the disorder of the finances alienated the hearts of the people; and the entire confidence he reposed in his confessor, completed the disgust in such a manner, as to make the three last years of his life, in the opinion of most of his subjects, obscure the glory of all his former great or memorable actions.

Q. After he was deprived of all his children, was not he particularly fond of his natural sons?

A. His fondness for the duke of *Maine*, and the count *de Toulouse*, induced him, in 1715, to give them the rights, honour, rank, and name of the princes of the blood, by an edict which was registered without any remonstrance; whereby he confirmed the crown to their families, on failure of all the princes of the blood of *France*: thus moderating, by the natural law, the severity of positive laws, which deprive children born out of marriage of all right to paternal succession. However, murmurs were raised: a suit was commenced by the princes of the blood, against the legitimated princes; who, nevertheless, have preserved to themselves, and their children, the honours given them by *Lewis*: but the fate of their posterity must depend upon time, upon merit, and upon fortune.

Q. How long did *Lewis* live after this transaction?

A. At his return from *Marli*, about the middle of *August* 1715, he was seized with that illness which ended his days: his legs swelled; a mortification began to appear, and the disease was mortal; for his majesty died, on *Sunday* the 21st of *August*, about eight in the morning, in the seventy seventh year of his age.

Q. Was

Q. Was not his behaviour, in his last moments, suitable to the glory of his life?

A. He beheld death with a surprizing greatness of soul. *I thought*, said he to madam de Maintenon, *it was more difficult to die.* To his domesticks he said, *why do you weep? did you believe me immortal?* He gave orders with great tranquility, concerning many things; even for his funeral solemnity: but his magnanimity was more conspicuous, when he took his young successor, and held him between his arms as he lay in bed; saying to him the following remarkable words: "You are soon going to be king over a great kingdom: what I most earnestly recommend to you is, never to forget the obligations you have to God; remember that it is to him you owe every thing. Endeavour to preserve peace with your neighbours: I have been too fond of war; imitate me not in that, no more than in my too great expences. Take advice in all things; endeavour to distinguish the best, and always follow it. Relieve your people as much as you can, and do what I have had the misfortune not to be able to do myself:" which words, his successor the present *French* monarch, has always preserved in writing, at the head of his bed.

Q. Was not *Lewis* married to madam de Maintenon?

A. Yes: he had several mistresses, at different times; but this lady had the greatest ascendancy over him: she was so amiable and sensible a woman, as to inspire the king with so much fondness, and so many scruples, that *Lewis*, following the advice of father *de la Chaise*, secretly married her, in 1686; his majesty being then in the forty eighth year of his age, and madam

Maintenon

Maintenon in her fifty second : but it was always disputed at Court, whether she was married or not ; for she was regarded as the king's choice, without paying her the respect due to a queen.

Q. What character has been given of this monarch since his death ?

A. That, if we consider him in his private life, we see him a good son, without being governed by his mother ; a good husband, even without being faithful ; a good father, a good master, and always amiable with dignity.

Q. How was his death regarded by his subjects ?

A. Although both the life and death of *Lewis XIV.* were glorious, he was not regretted so much as he deserved. However, time which matures the opinions of men, has stamped its seal upon his reputation ; and, notwithstanding all that has been written against him, his name will never be pronounced without respect, nor without receiving the idea of an age for ever memorable.

LEWIS XV.

WHO succeeded *Lewis XIV.* ?

A. His great grandson, *Lewis XV.* the only surviving son of *Lewis* duke of *Burgundy*, by *Maria Adelaïda* of *Savoy* ; who was born the 15th of *September 1710.*

Q. As the young king was a minor, how was the kingdom governed ?

A. Notwithstanding the deceased monarch had appointed a council of regency, the duke of *Orleans*,

leans, who was next heir to the crown in case of the death of the minor king, as being the son of *Philip* duke of *Orleans*, brother to *Lewis XIV.* claimed the office of regent, as due to him by his birth ; to which he obtained the concurrence of the parliament of *Paris*, and thereupon assumed an authority equal to the greatest princes ; nor was *Lewis XIV.* himself ever guilty of more arbitrary and destructive measures, which the duke endeavoured to excuse from the necessity he was under of extricating the crown from that load of debts with which he found it oppressed.

Q. Did *Lewis XIV.* leave his kingdom greatly in debt ?

A. Yes ; surprizingly so ; for, during his reign, he expended eighteen thousand millions of livres ; which, one time with another, amounted to three hundred and thirty millions yearly of the present money of *France* : but, as the ordinary revenue of the crown did not exceed one hundred and seventeen millions annually, the surplus was always furnished by extraordinary methods of supply : whereby *Lewis*, at his death, left a debt of two thousand six hundred millions of livres, at twenty eight livres to the mark, according to the value of the coin at that time ; which makes about four thousand five hundred millions of *French* money, as it stood in 1750.

Q. Was *France*, in any capacity to discharge this enormous debt ?

A. It is astonishing, yet true, that this immense debt would have been no insupportable burthen upon the state, had *France* at that time been possessed of a flourishing commerce, an established bank, and wealthy companies capable of supporting the credit of its bills, as in *England*, *Sweden*, *Holland*, and *Venice* ; which were afterwards

wards done with success: for the trade of the *India, African, and American* companies began to revive; while many families were sent to form a settlement on the river *Mississippi* in *North America*; but this latter came to nothing.

Q. Did the regent take any measures to reduce the public debts?

A. Yes, very fatal ones: for, in 1716, the actions, whereby paper became as valuable as gold in *France*, were set on foot: but, when enough of these were issued to pay off the national debt, the value of them was reduced, to the great loss of the public creditors; and such, as had converted them into estates, suffered great fines: by which means, the government gained at once a fifth part of all the money in the kingdom, computed to amount to about six hundred millions of *livres*.

Q. How long did the good understanding, and union betwixt *France* and *Spain*, which had given the alarm to so many nations, continue?

A. It broke off soon after the death of *Lewis XIV.* the duke of *Orleans*, though irreproachable as to his guardianship of the young prince, behaved as if he himself had been to succeed; forming a strict alliance with *England*, though reputed the natural enemy of *France*; and making an open rupture with that branch of the *Bourbon* family which reigned at *Madrid*. *Philip V.* who had renounced all pretensions to the crown of *France* by the late peace, raised, or rather gave the authority of his name to raise, seditions in *France*; alledging that he ought to have been chosen regent, as he could not reign in that kingdom.

Q. Did

Q. Did the death of *Lewis* give a different turn to all the views, negotiations, and political measures, which had been before concerted?

A. They did; both with regard to his own family, as well as among most of the princes in *Europe*. The regent of *France*, in concert with the *English*, formed the triple, and quadruple alliances, and attacked *Spain*; so that the first war of *Lewis XV.* was undertaken against his uncle, whom *Lewis XIV.* had settled on his throne, at the expence of so much blood.

Q. What was done by the *Spanish* ministry, during the course of this war?

A. They designed to take advantage of the duke of *Savoy*, who had likewise formed a scheme of doing somewhat of the same nature with regard to the emperor. The result of this chaos of intrigues was, that the *Spaniards* deprived the emperor of *Sardinia*, and the duke of *Savoy* of *Sicily*, in 1718: but, *France* having defeated them by land, and the *English* by sea, they were forced to give up *Sicily* to the house of *Austria*, and *Sardinia* was assigned to the duke of *Savoy*, who still possess it, and bear the title of kings of that island.

Q. Was not the regency of the duke of *Orleans* attended with great troubles, by means of his secret enemies, and the almost total ruin of the finances?

A. On the contrary, it proved extremely quiet and fortunate; for the people, having been inured to submission, became the safety of the regent, and of the public tranquillity. A conspiracy directed at a distance, by the cardinal *Alberoni*, and but ill conducted in *France*, was discovered, and crushed in embryo. The parliament, which, during the administration of the late queen regent, had

had raised a civil war, and had annulled the wills of *Lewis XIII.* and *XIV.* with less ceremony than that of a private person, was scarce at liberty to make remonstrances, when the value of the specie was increased to three times more than the usual standard: and their procession on foot, from the grand chamber to the *Louvre*, served only to draw upon them the raileries of the people. In short, it was at this time, that the famous project of *Law* which had seemed to threaten the regency, and the kingdom with destruction, contributed, in reality, to the support of both, by consequences which none had foreseen.

Q. What were these consequences, which required such experience and penetration to discover?

A. That a chimerical project, produced a real commerce, and restored the *India* company, which had been established by the famous *Colbert*, but ruined by the late wars; by which, though the fortune of many private persons had been greatly diminished, the nation in a little time became richer and more flourishing. This project sharpened the understanding of the people, as civil wars generally excite their courage.

Q. How long did this distraction in the finances continue?

A. It ceased with the regency; for the king, in 1722, was crowned at *Rheims*, and declared major by the parliament: the duke of *Orleans* died in 1723. when cardinal *Fleury* came to the head of the ministry; who, if there ever was a happy mortal upon earth, was surely so. All his measures from 1726, to 1742, proved successful; and he preserved his intellectual faculties, sound, and clear, even to the ninetieth year of his age.

Q. How

Q. How did this minister act, to contribute so much for the benefit of the *French* nation ?

A. He let the kingdom quietly repair its losses, and grow rich by an extensive commerce, without making any innovation : thus treating the state, as a strong, and robust constitution, which naturally recovers itself. Happily for *Europe*, sir *Robert Walpole*, the prime minister of *England*, was of a disposition equally pacific. These two great men maintained almost all *Europe*, in that tranquility, which lasted from the peace of *Utrecht* to the year 1733 ; and which was but once interrupted by the short war in 1718. This was a happy time for all nations ; who, cultivating commerce and arts with emulation, forgot their past calamities.

Q. From what cause did the fresh troubles in *Europe* proceed ?

A. All remained peaceable from *Russia* even to *Spain*, till the death of *Augustus II.* king of *Poland*, plunged her again into fresh commotions, from which she is so seldom exempted : King *Stanislaus*, being nominated to the succession in 1704, was elected king of *Poland* in 1733, in the most solemn and legal manner ; but the emperor *Charles VI.* procured another election, which was supported by his own arms, and those of *Russia* ; whereby a son of the late king of *Poland* elector of *Saxony*, who had married a niece of *Charles VI.* carried it against his competitor.

Q. How did the court of *London* behave on this occasion ?

A. Cardinal *Fleury*, who took particular care to keep *England* quiet, was neither willing to suffer the shame of deserting *Stanislaus*, whose daughter had been married to *Lewis XV.* nor did he chuse to venture too great a force to succour him ;

him ; therefore, he only sent a fleet with fifteen hundred men, under the command of a brigadier.

Q. In what manner did *Fleury* execute his vengeance upon the emperor ?

A. By policy : he formed a league with *Spain* and *Sardinia* ; and though these three powers had each separate interests, yet they all aimed at humbling *Austria*. The great distance of *Russia*, hindered them from carrying on their resentments against the *Muscovites* : but no negociation was ever more speedily terminated, than that which united these three monarchs.

Q. Did *England* and *Holland*, who had been so long accustomed to join *Austria* against *France*, abandon her at this juncture ?

A. Yes : and this was the effect of that reputation for equity, which the *French* court had lately acquired. They had gotten possession of the country upon the *Rhine* ; and another party of their troops, in conjunction with those of *Spain* and *Sardinia*, had rendered themselves masters of *Italy*. Marshal *Villars* finished his glorious career, in the eighty-second year of his age, after having taken *Milan*. Marshal *de Coigni*, his successor, gained two battles ; whilst the duke *de Montemar*, the *Spanish* general, obtained a victory, in the kingdom of *Naples*, at *Bitonto*, from whence he was surnamed.

Q. What followed this series of success ?

A. *Don Carlos*, who had been acknowledged hereditary successor of *Tuscany*, was now declared king of *Naples* and *Sicily*. Thus the emperor *Charles VI.* lost almost all *Italy*, for having given a king to *Poland* : and, in two campaigns, a son of the *Spanish* monarch got both the *Sicilies*, so often taken and retaken formerly, and upon which

which, for two ages, the house of *Austria* had continually fixed her attention.

Q. Were not conditions of peace offered to the emperor, by the victorious *French*, at this time?

A. He thought himself very happy in receiving them: however, cardinal *Fleury*, who had the sagacity to prevent *England* and *Holland* from intermeddling in this war, shewed likewise his great address in finishing it, without their mediation, by the treaty of *Vienna*, in *October* 1735.

Q. What were the chief articles of this treaty?

A. 1. That *Don Carlos* should be acknowledged king of *Naples* and *Sicily*. 2. They assigned to *Francis* duke of *Lorraine*, destined to be son-in-law to the emperor, the inheritance of the *Medicis* family, which had been before granted to *Don Carlos*. 3. The dutchies of *Parma* and *Placentia*, which, by right of blood belonged to *Don Carlos*, son of *Philip V.* and a princess of *Parma*, were given up to the emperor *Charles VI.* as his property. 4. The king of *Sardinia*, who expected the duchy of *Milan*, had only a small part thereof; namely, the *Novarese*, *Tortonese*, and the fiefs of the *Langhes*. 5. *Stanislaus* renounced a kingdom; but kept the title of king; for which loss he was recompenced with *Barrois*, and the dukedom of *Lorraine*, though with reversion to the crown of *France*: and, in lieu of the latter, *France* paid to the duke of *Lorraine* a pension of four millions and five hundred thousand livres, till *Tuscany* fell to him. The reigning house of the princes of *Lorraine* got *Tuscany*. The second son of the king of *Spain* was transferred to *Naples*: so that the medal of *Trajan* might have been renewed; *Regna assignata* "Kingdoms are assigned."

Q. Was not the house of *Bourbon* now again advanced to a great height of grandeur?

P

A. T.

A. To more than she could have expected, even in the prosperity of *Lewis XIV.* Almost all the inheritance of *Charles V.* *Spain*, the two *Sicilies*, *Mexico*, and *Peru*, were now in her possession. The house of *Austria* at last ended in the person of *Charles VI.* who died on the ninth of *October*, 1740. The remainder of his dominions was likely to be re-taken from his daughter, and divided among several powers. *France* carried the election of an emperor. The famous pragmatic sanction of the late emperor, who had thereby settled his dominions on his daughter, and which, was guaranteed by the *Empire*, *England*, *Holland*, and *France* herself, was at this time supported by no one power.

2. Who was chosen emperor?

A. The elector of *Bavaria*, son of him who had been put under the ban of the empire; while *France*, *Prussia*, *Saxony*, and *Bavaria*, attacked the remains of the house of *Austria*.

2. How did the queen of *Hungary* surmount so many misfortunes?

A. The house of *Austria* sprung up again out of her ashes. The queen of *Hungary* found a powerful ally in his *Britannic* majesty. Her cause was likewise soon after espoused by the king of *Sardinia*, *Holland*, and even by *Russia*, who sent the last year of the war thirty thousand men to her assistance.

2. Where was this war carried on?

A. In the heart of *Germany*, in *Italy*, in *Flanders*, and even on the frontiers of *France*: on the *Indian* and *American* seas, almost in the same manner as in the year 1701. *Fleury*, now too far advanced in years, lavished away the treasures of *France*, in this war, with regret: the *English* destroyed

destroyed what remained of their navy; and the provinces of *France* lay altogether exposed.

Q. How long did cardinal *Fleury* live after the commencement of this war?

A. He died, greatly lamented, in 1743. when *Lewis XV.* took the government upon himself, and repaired the misfortunes which arose in the last years of *Fleury's* ministry. He was successful every where, except in *Italy*; where he had to oppose the king of *Sardinia*, whom the cardinal had alienated from *France*.

Q. Was there nothing very remarkable in this war?

A. Yes: there never had been seen so many sovereigns at the head of their armies. *Francis* of *Lorraine*, grand duke of *Tuscany*, and afterwards emperor, often headed the *Austrian* troops. *Don Carlos* king of *Naples*, commanded his army at *Veletri*; and the king of *Great Britain* in person gained a battle near the *Maine*. The king of *Sardinia* appeared every where with his troops, and always with success. The king of *Prussia* obtained five victories. *Lewis XV.* procured glory to his nation at the battle of *Fontenoy*; and preserved them in that of *Laufeld*.

Q. What more was done by *Lewis XV.* during the course of this war?

A. After having in person subdued all *Flanders*, and taken *Maestricht*, by marshal *Saxe*; after his enemies were driven out of *Provence* by marshal *Bellisle*; after having saved *Genoa* by marshal *Richlieu*; after having settled the king of *Naples* on his throne; he made a peace as glorious as any of his campaigns, by the treaty of *Aix la Chapelle*, in 1748.

Q. In what particulars did the glory of this peace consist?

A. I. In

A. 1. In preserving nothing to himself of what he had conquered. 2. In restoring the *Genoese* to their rights. 3. In establishing the duke of *Modena*, in his dominions. 4. And in settling the infant *Don Philip* in *Parma* and *Placentia*, the inheritance of his mother. This was, indeed, a great acquisition, thus to be the protector of his allies: reputation among powerful princes, being equal to conquests.

Q. Did not the Christian powers in *Europe*, after *France* was re-established, on the same footing as at the peace of *Utrecht*, endeavour to become a check upon each other, and maintain a balance?

A. Hereupon, they divided into two grand parties; the empress queen of *Hungary*, part of *Germany*, *Russia*, *Great Britain*, *Holland*, and *Sardinia*, composed the one; *France*, *Spain*, the two *Sicilies*, *Prussia*, and *Sweden*, formed the other: all these powers keeping up standing armies, from that dread which one half of *Europe*, seemed to have of the other.

Q. Who was the first that maintained such numerous standing armies?

A. *Lwis XIV.* and this obliged the other princes to do the same for their own safety. So that, after the peace of *Aix la Chapelle*, there were about a million of men in arms; and it is to be hoped, as all the powers have armed to defend themselves, that it will be long before any one dares to be the aggressor.

F I N I S.

